MY20 RG Trailblazer

Owner's Manual

GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232, Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (hereinafter Holden)

Change of name, address or ownership

If you drive a pre-owned Holden, have moved house or changed any of your details, we'd like to hear from you!

Holden uses your details to keep your vehicle's factory provided Roadside Assistance and Warranty details up to date.

It also helps us let you know if there is an existing rework action required on your vehicle. To update your details, please take a few minutes to fill in and mail the form at the back of the Service & Warranty Booklet or visit Holden's website at: www.holden.com.au/forms/change-of-owner-details

GM Holden Ltd (Holden) is collecting the new owner's personal information in order to process the request for transfer for the specified vehicle. We may disclose your personal information to our related companies and third parties who provide us with (or help us provide) products and services, including to overseas locations such as the USA, and other countries in Europe, Oceania and Asia.
Holden's privacy policy (available at: www.holden.com.au/privacypolicy) states how you can seek to access or correct any personal information Holden holds about you, how to complain about a privacy breach by Holden and how Holden will deal with a privacy complaint.
You can contact Holden on 1800 033 349 or alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at: holdencustomercare@gm.com

Note: Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

© 2019 GM Holden Ltd.
© 2019 Holden New Zealand Ltd.
Reproduction in whole or part is prohibited without written approval from GM Holden Ltd., ABN 84 006 893 232 (Australia) or Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (New Zealand)

Printed in Australia
Part No. 92511013
March 2019
(MY20 RG Trailblazer. Print 1)

Contents

Introduction 2
Keys, Doors, and Windows 7
Seats and Restraints 23
Storage 47
Instruments and Controls 55
Lighting 82
Infotainment System 89
Climate Controls 170
Driving and Operating 178
Vehicle Care 221
Service and Maintenance 273
Technical Data 275
Customer Information 282
Index 286

Introduction

We thank you for choosing Holden and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your driving pleasure and satisfaction.

This owner's manual applies to the current Trailblazer vehicle. Therefore, due to different models and options, you may find reference in this manual to some equipment not fitted to your own vehicle.

Please note that all information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest production information available at the time of printing.

Holden reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

Using this Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, special equipment or accessories.**
- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in bold letters.
- For a complete list of the registered trademarks contained in this manual see Trademarks and License Agreements. *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ *133*, *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ *168* and *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ *282*.

Danger, Warning, and Caution

⚠ Danger

Text marked ⚠ **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

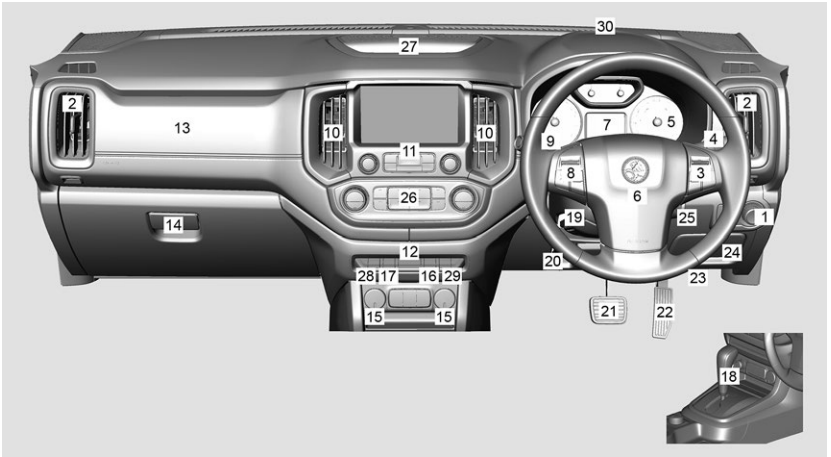
⚠ Warning

Text marked ⚠ **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Instrument Panel Overview



1. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *82*
2. Side Air Vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* ⇨ *175*
3. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *199*
4. *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *84*

   Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer ⇨ *83*

   Driver Information Centre (DIC) ⇨ *71*
5. *Instrument Panel Overview* ⇨ *56*
6. *Horn* ⇨ *58*

   Driver's Airbag. See *Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light* ⇨ *66*
7. *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *71*
8. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *92* or *Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped)* ⇨ *145*
9. Windscreen Wiper, Windscreen Washer System. See *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *59*
10. Central Air Vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* ⇨ *175*
11. Radio Controls and Display. See *Overview* ⇨ *90*
12. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *84*
13. Passenger Airbag. See *Front Airbag System* ⇨ *38*
14. *Glove Box* ⇨ *48*
15. *Power Outlets* ⇨ *61*
16. *Descent Control System (DCS)* ⇨ *197*
17. *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ *196*

    Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ⇨ *197*
18. *Shift Lever* ⇨ *188*

19. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *57*
20. Bonnet Release Lever. See *Bonnet* ⇨ *224*
21. Brake Pedal. See *Brakes* ⇨ *194*
22. Accelerator Pedal. See *New Vehicle Break-In* ⇨ *181*
23. Fuel Tank Flap Release Lever. See *Filling the Tank* ⇨ *213*
24. *Instrument Panel Fuse Block* ⇨ *245*
25. *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *181*
26. *Air Conditioning System* ⇨ *170* or *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ *172*
27. *Instrument Panel Storage* ⇨ *47*
28. *Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* ⇨ *210*
29. *Parking Assist* ⇨ *203*
30. Reflected LED Alert. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *201*

✍ NOTES

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 7
Remote Vehicle Start 9
Remote Control 11
Memorised Settings 11
Getting In and Out of the Vehicle 12
Manual Door Locks 12
Central Locking System 13
Safety Locks 13

Doors
Tailgate 14

Vehicle Security
Anti-theft Alarm System 15
Immobiliser 16

Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors 17
Power Mirrors 17
Folding Mirrors 17

Interior Mirrors
Manual Rearview Mirror 18
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror (If equipped) 19

Windows
Windows 19
Power Windows 19
Heated Rear Window 21
Sun Visors 22

Keys and Locks

Keys

Caution
Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

The key operates the doors, tailgate and the ignition. The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system is operated with the RKE transmitter built into the key.

Lock: Press to lock the doors and tailgate. The hazard lamps flash once.

If any door, the tailgate or the bonnet is not fully closed, the central locking system will not operate and a horn chirp will be issued as warning.

Unlock: Two unlocking modes are available:

- Press once. All doors and the tailgate are unlocked.
- Press once to unlock the driver's door. Press twice to unlock all other doors and the tailgate.

The hazard lamps flash twice. The 'Remote Door Unlock' setting can be changed through the Infotainment System. See *Settings ⇨ 130* or *Settings ⇨ 165*.

Additionally the side windows can be operated with the RKE transmitter.

- Press and hold to automatically open all windows.
- Press to automatically close any open windows.

The 'Remote Window Operation' setting can be changed through the Infotainment System. See *Settings ⇨ 130* or *Settings ⇨ 165*.

Note
Should you wish to leave the windows open to allow ventilation when parked and locked, you will need to turn the 'Remote Window Operation' function off.

Foldaway Key Blade

1. Press the button to extend the key blade.
2. To retract the key blade, press the button and fold the blade into the key.

About the Key

- The RKE transmitter has a range of up to 20 metres.

  The range depends on the charge of the transmitter battery, on ambient conditions, the location and the area between the transmitter and vehicle.

Note

The application of after-market window tinting with metallic film may reduce the operating range of the RKE transmitter. The metallic film in some tinting materials can interfere or distort the incoming radio signal. Speak to a window tinting specialist before applying any film.

- Take care that no button is pressed unintentionally, especially when the vehicle is out of sight.
- Protect from moisture and high temperatures.

The RKE transmitter buttons may not work if:

- It is more than 20 metres from the vehicle.
- Battery voltage is too low.

  See Battery replacement under *Remote Control* ⇨ *11*.
- The buttons are operated repeatedly while not in range of the vehicle.
- The central locking system is operated at frequent intervals.
- The power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- The vehicle is parked near strong radio activity.

Replacement Keys

If a key is lost, a replacement can be ordered through a Holden Dealer by quoting the code number. The number is printed on a detachable tag supplied with the key.

Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped, this feature allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

(Remote Vehicle Start) : This button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.

Laws in some communities may restrict the use of remote starters. Check local regulations for any requirements on remote starting of vehicles.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear demist may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions.

Do not use remote start if the vehicle is out of fuel as it may run out of fuel.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Control* ⇨ *11*.

Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing Step 2, press and hold for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash to confirm that the request for remotely starting the vehicle has been received.

When the engine starts, the park lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The doors will be locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. Repeat the steps for a 10 minute time extension. Remote start can be extended only once.

To enter the vehicle, unlock the doors.

- If the engine is running, insert the key and turn the ignition switch to ON.
- If the engine is not running, start the engine normally.

Extending Engine Run Time

For a 10 minute extension, repeat Steps 1–3 while the engine is still running. The remote start can be extended once.

When the remote start is extended, the second 10 minutes will be added on for a total of 20 minutes. An extension can be done 30 seconds after starting.

A maximum of two remote starts, or a single start with an extension, is allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle's ignition must be turned on and then back off before the remote start procedure can be used again.

Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold until the park lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if:

- The key is in the ignition.
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- The malfunction indicator lamp is on.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.

- Two remote vehicle starts, or a single remote start with an extension, have already been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

Remote Control

Battery Replacement

As soon as the range of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter reduces, replace the battery.

Replace Battery in Remote Key may also be displayed in the instrument cluster when the battery requires replacing.

Caution

Avoid touching the flat surfaces of the battery, the circuit board and other components inside the remote control with bare fingers. Handling will shorten battery life.

1. Open the cover.
2. Remove the used battery.
3. Install the new battery.

   Use a CR2032 (or equivalent) battery.

   Place the negative side (-) down towards the base.
4. Close the cover.
5. Check the RKE transmitter operation.

Note

- Batteries do not belong in household waste. Dispose of at an appropriate recycling collection point.
- Avoid dropping the RKE transmitter.
- Do not place heavy objects on the RKE transmitter.
- Keep the RKE transmitter away from water and direct sunlight.
- If the RKE transmitter gets wet, wipe it with a soft cloth.

Memorised Settings

Whenever the ignition is switched off, the following settings are automatically memorised by the remote control unit or the electronic key.

- Lighting
- Infotainment system (If supported)

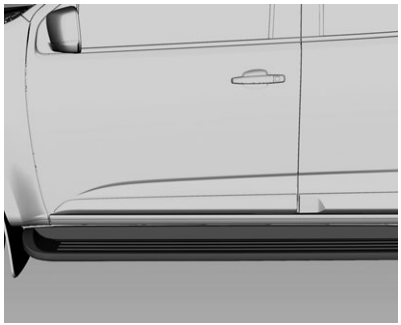
- Central locking system
- Comfort settings

The saved settings are automatically used next time the ignition is switched on with the memorised key of the remote control unit or the electronic key.

See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *80*.

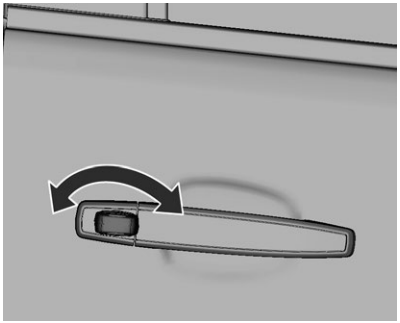
Getting In and Out of the Vehicle

Side Steps



The side steps provide an extra foothold for accessing the front or rear doors.

Manual Door Locks



- Insert the key into the door lock.
- Turn the key clockwise to lock all doors.
- Turn the key anticlockwise to unlock the driver's door.

Note

Tap the key slot or heat the key if the door does not unlock in cold weather.

Door Lock Snibs

- To lock all doors from the inside, push the door lock snib so it is flush with the door handle.
- To unlock any door from the inside, pull the door lock snib outwards.
- The driver's door lock snib does not operate when the door is open.

Note

Do not operate the switches constantly.

Central Locking System

Doors may be locked and unlocked by pressing buttons on:

- The driver’s door armrest
- The key from inside or outside the vehicle

Note

- The driver's door must be closed for the driver's door to lock.
- A horn chirp may sound as a reminder if a door is not closed.
- Pulling on an interior door handle will not unlock a door unless an unlock button has been pressed.

The vehicle may have features that can have customised settings. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *80*.

Central locking button

Locks and unlocks all doors.

- Press to lock.
- Press to unlock.

Safety Locks

⚠ Warning

Use the child security door locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

The child security rear door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Rotate the switch using a key or suitable screwdriver.

To activate:

- Rotate the switch in the direction of the arrow shown on the door.

To open a door when the child security rear door lock is activated:

- Open the door from the outside.

Doors

Tailgate

⚠ Danger

It can be very dangerous to drive with the tailgate open. Carbon monoxide (CO) gas can enter the vehicle. You cannot see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If you must drive with the tailgate open, make sure all other windows are closed and switch the fan on to the highest speed using any setting that brings in outside air. Doing this will force outside air into the vehicle.

Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check the area above and behind for obstructions, to avoid damage to the tailgate.

Note

Adding heavy accessories to the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

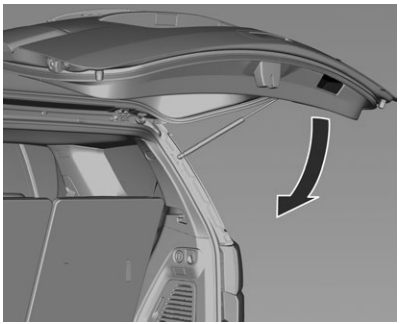
Opening

1. Push the touchpad button on the tailgate.
2. Pull the handle upwards to open.

Note

If the tailgate is open when the ignition is turned on, a message is displayed in the DIC and a chime sounds.

Closing



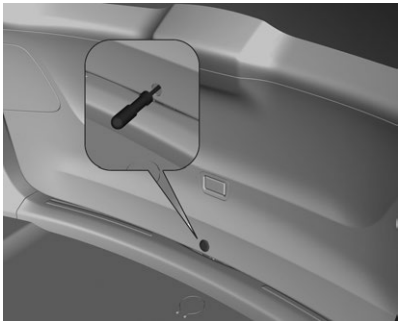
Pull the interior handle downwards so the tailgate latches securely.

Note

Do not operate the touchpad button below the number plate while closing, as this will unlatch the tailgate or open it again.

Manual Tailgate Release

If the battery has been disconnected or is flat the tailgate unlock button will not operate.



To open the tailgate:

1. Remove the interior trim cover from the central latch area.
2. Using a screwdriver, push inwards as far as possible and turn anticlockwise.

Vehicle Security

Anti-theft Alarm System

The system monitors the doors, ignition, bonnet and tailgate.

The system is activated:

- Thirty seconds after locking the vehicle.
- Alternatively, by pressing a second time.

The system is deactivated by:

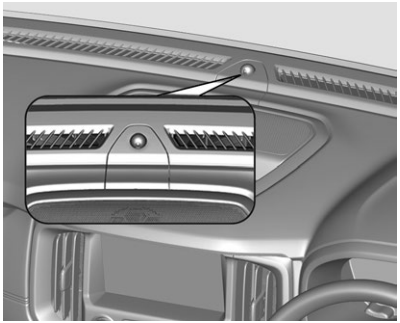
- Pressing on the key.

Note

- If the driver's door is opened manually, while the alarm is activated, the key needs to be inserted into the ignition within 10 seconds to avoid triggering the alarm. During the 10 seconds, the horn chirps and the hazard warning flashers activate to provide a warning.

- When the alarm is triggered, the horn sounds and the hazard warning flashers activate for 30 seconds.
- If the alarm was triggered during alarm activation, the horn will sound three times and the hazard warning flashers will activate three times.

Status LED



The status LED is located on top of the instrument panel.

During the first 30 seconds of system activation:

- LED illuminates (test, arming delay).
- LED flashes quickly (doors or bonnet are not completely closed, or there is a system fault).

When the system is armed:

- LED flashes slowly.

If a fault occurs, contact a Holden Dealer.

Immobiliser

The immobiliser prevents unauthorised engine starting.

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system. The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilised when the vehicle is turned off. The system is automatically disarmed when the ignition is turned from off to on. The security light in the instrument cluster comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on. If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again. If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be undamaged, try another ignition key. It may be necessary to check the fuse. If the engine still does not start with the other key, the vehicle needs service. If the vehicle does start, the first key may be faulty. See your dealer.

It is possible for the immobiliser system to learn new or replacement keys. Up to eight keys can be programmed for the vehicle. Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the vehicle theft system in the vehicle. See your dealer to get a new key blank cut exactly as the ignition key that operates the system.

Note

The immobiliser does not lock the doors.

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors

The convex exterior mirrors provide a wider view of the road and traffic.

⚠ Warning
Objects seen in these mirrors are closer than they appear.

Power Mirrors

Adjust the driver's or passenger's side mirror.

L: Left side mirror selected

R: Right side mirror selected

●: No mirrors selected

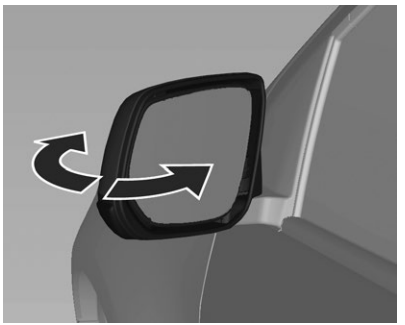
To adjust an exterior mirror:

1. Push the switch to L or R.
2. Press the directional switch to adjust the angle of the mirror.

Folding Mirrors

Manual Folding

The vehicle may have manual folding mirrors.



When the vehicle is parked, the mirrors may be folded flat against the side of the vehicle.

Electric Folding

The vehicle may have electric folding mirrors.

Press the selector switch (L / R switch) to the central position ●, then push the four-way switch down. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Press the four-way switch down again and both exterior mirrors return to their original position.

If one mirror has been manually extended or folded, the other mirror can be extended or folded electronically by pressing the four-way switch down.

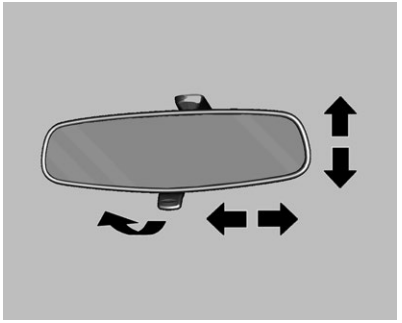
⚠ Warning

Always keep your mirrors properly adjusted, and use them while driving to increase your visibility of objects and other vehicles around you. Do not drive while either outside rear view mirror is folded back.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

Manual Anti-glare



Caution

The inner rear view mirror can be moved in four directions, so be cautious and avoid the contact with the sun visors. Adjust all mirrors in the most effective position before starting to drive the vehicle.

To reduce headlamp glare from following vehicles, pull the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror (If equipped)

Headlamp glare from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.

Windows

Note

The application of after-market window tinting with metallic film may reduce the operating range of the RKE transmitter. The metallic film in some tinting materials can interfere or distort the incoming radio signal. Speak to a window tinting specialist before applying any film.

Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Be careful when closing the windows. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Power windows can be operated:

- With the ignition on.
- Within 10 minutes after switching the ignition off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, window operation is disabled when a door is opened.

Operate the switch for each respective window by pushing to open, or pulling to close. The driver's window switch incorporates a light which signals operating readiness when illuminated.

Auto Up/Down

To fully open a window automatically, press the switch fully down. To fully close a window automatically, pull the switch fully up.

In automatic operation, the window will fully open or close even if you release the switch.

To stop the window at a desired position while the window is in automatic operation, pull up or press down and release the switch to the same direction of the movement.

Anti-pinch Function

If a window encounters resistance during auto closing, it will stop immediately and open again.

⚠ Warning

Anti-pinch function may not operate after consecutive uses. Do not operate the window switch with no purpose.

Override Safety Function

In an emergency, the anti-pinch function can be overridden. Pull and hold the window switch fully up. The window will rise for as long as the switch is held. Once the switch is released, auto mode is re-activated.

While in override, the window can close on an object in its path. Use care when using the override mode.

⚠ Warning

Body parts outside the vehicle can be struck by passing objects. Keep all parts of the body inside vehicle.

Children can operate and become entrapped in power windows.

Do not leave your keys or unattended children in your car.

Serious injury or death can occur from misuse of power windows.

Pressure Relief

To reduce the effort required to close the front door, when a front door is opened, if closed its window will automatically lower several centimetres. Once the door is closed, the window will raise automatically.

If a window fails to close, a horn chirp may sound.

Child Safety System for Windows

Press to deactivate the rear door power window switches. The rear door power windows can still be operated by the driver's door switches.

Remote Power Window Opening / Closing

The power windows can be opened or closed using the RKE transmitter. See *Keys* ⇨ *7*.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation may be disabled for some time.

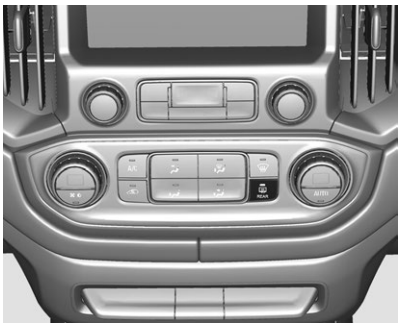
Initialising the Power Windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power window switch to move the window down fully and hold for an additional 2 seconds.
3. Pull the power window switch to move the window up fully and hold for an additional 2 seconds.

The power window auto up / down and anti-pinch functions should now operate as normal. If not, see your Dealer.

Heated Rear Window



Electronic Control

Operated by pressing the REAR button.

Manual Control

Operated by pressing the button.

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time or by pressing the button again.

The **LED** lights up to indicate that it is on.

Caution

Do not use sharp instruments or abrasive window cleaners on your vehicle's rear window.

Do not scratch or damage the defroster wires when you clean or work around the rear window.

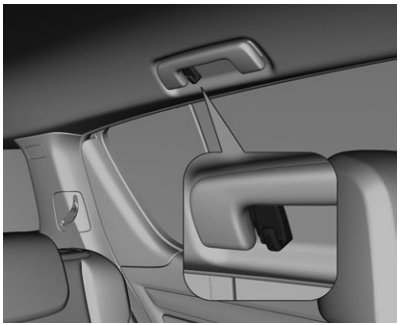
Sun Visors

- The sun visors can be folded down or folded outwards over the side window, to prevent glare.
- If the sun visor has a mirror, close the cover when driving.

⚠ Warning

Do not place the sun visor in such a position that it reduces visibility of the roadway, traffic or other objects.

Assist grips



The vehicle may have assist grips.

- Assist grips are located above the doors to assist passengers getting in and out of the vehicle.
- The assist grips above each rear door may include a coat hook.

⚠ Warning

Do not hold onto the assist grips while seated in the vehicle.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 23

Front Seats
Seat Position 25
Seat Adjustment 25
Power Seat Adjustment 27
Heated Front Seats 28

Rear Seats
Rear Seats 28
Second Row Seats 29
Third Row Seats 31

Seat Belts
Seat Belts 33
Three-Point Seat Belt 34
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 36
Safety Belt Care 36
Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash 36

Airbag System
Airbag System 37
Front Airbag System 38
Side Airbag System 39
Curtain Airbag System 40
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 40

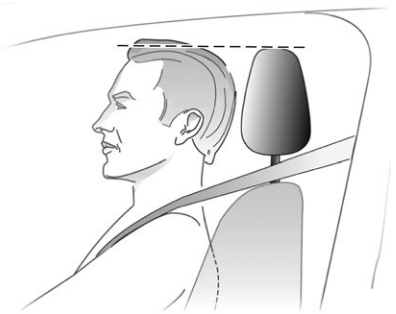
Child Restraints
Child Restraint Systems 41
Where to Put the Restraint 44
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 45
Top-Tether Child Restraint Systems 45

Head Restraints

⚠ Warning

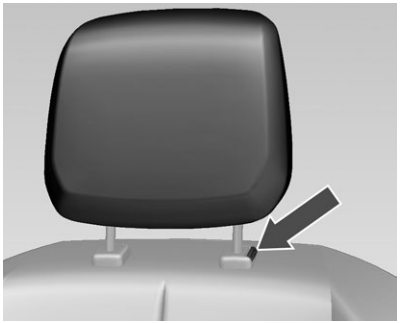
This safety feature is not intended to rest the head upon. It is solely for the reduction of whiplash neck movement in an accident involving your vehicle.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.



Height Adjustment

Head Restraints on Front Seats



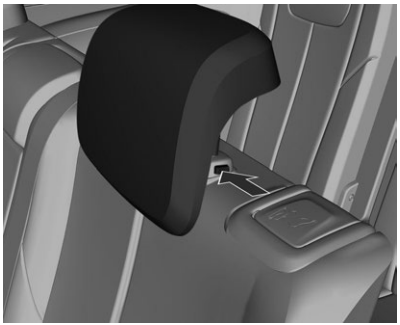
- Pull the head restraint up.
- To move down, press the locking button and push the head restraint downwards.

Head Restraints on Rear Seats

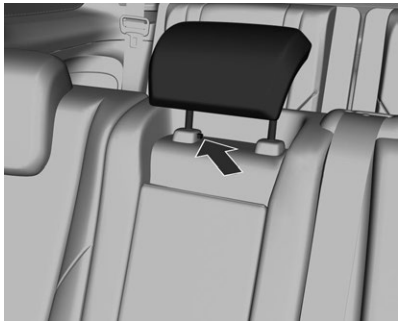
⚠ Warning

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.

Height Adjustment Second Row Seats

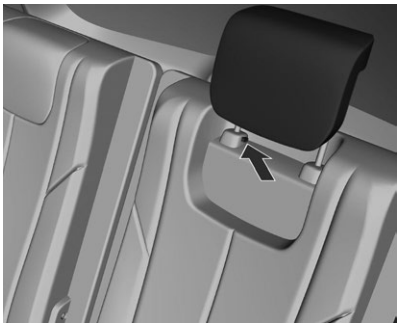


- Pull the head restraint up.
- To move down, press the locking button and push the head restraint downwards.



- Pull the head restraint up.
- To move down, press the locking button and push the head restraint downwards.

Height Adjustment Third Row Seats



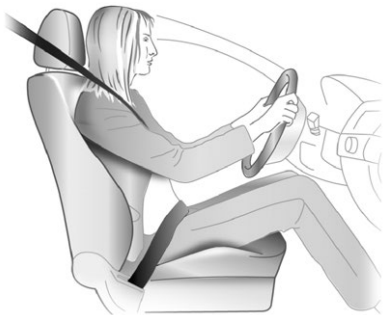
- Pull the head restraint up.
- To move down, press the locking button and push the head restraint downwards.

Front Seats

Seat Position

⚠ Warning

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seat belts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.



- Sit centrally in the seat.
- Use the backrest and cushion for support.
- Adjust the seat so that your legs are slightly angled when against the pedals.
- Adjust the backrest angle to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. See *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *57*.
- Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel.
- Adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *23*.
- Slide the passenger seat as far back as possible.

Seat Adjustment

⚠ Danger

Do not sit nearer than 25 cm from the steering wheel, to allow safe airbag deployment.

⚠ Danger

Never place objects of any size or shape under the front seats, because they can interfere with the moving mechanisms, other parts of the seat structure, or electrical components, when available, reducing or restricting the correct performance of these components and the safety system.

⚠ Danger

Never adjust the seat position placing your hands, fingers, feet or other body parts under the seat, because the seats have moving parts and metal that can cause injury.

⚠ Warning

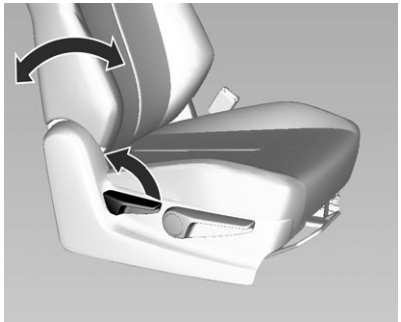
Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving as the seat could move suddenly causing the driver to lose control.

Seat Positioning

1. Move the seat forwards or backwards by lifting the handle at the front and sliding the seat.
2. Release the handle to engage the latch.

Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

Seat Backrests



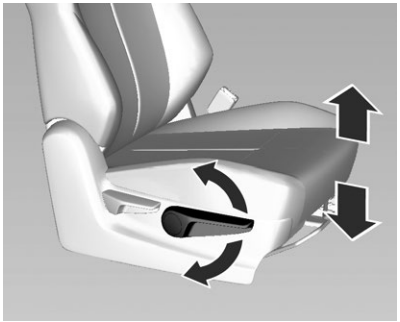
1. Recline the seatback by pulling the lever.
2. Adjust the angle and release the lever.
3. Allow the seat to engage.

Note

Do not lean on the seat when adjusting.

Seat Height

The vehicle may have seat height adjustment.



- To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

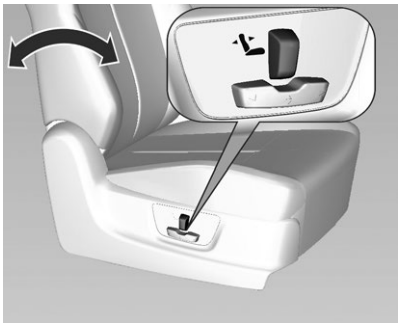
Power Seat Adjustment

Seat Positioning

The vehicle may have power seat adjustment.

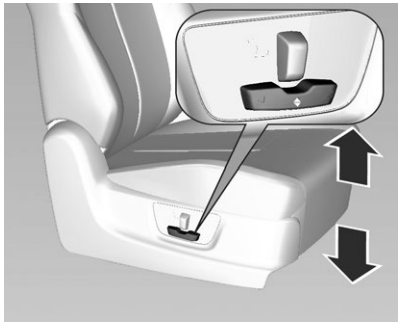
- Move the seat forwards or backwards by sliding the switch.

Seat Backrests



- Recline the seatback by sliding the switch forwards or backwards.

Seat Height



- To lower the seat cushion, push the switch downwards.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the switch upwards.

Heated Front Seats

The vehicle may have heated front seats.

To warm the seat:

1. Start the engine.
2. Press the switch .

   Low heat setting - 1 LED illuminates

   High heat setting - 2 LEDs illuminate

To turn the heater off:

1. Return the switch to the centre position.

   LEDs extinguish

⚠ Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (except genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.

Rear Seats

⚠ Danger

Ensure the rear seatbacks are securely in place.

Ensure the head restraints are adjusted correctly. The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.

Do not adjust the rear seatback while the vehicle is moving. This could cause damage or injuries to the occupants.

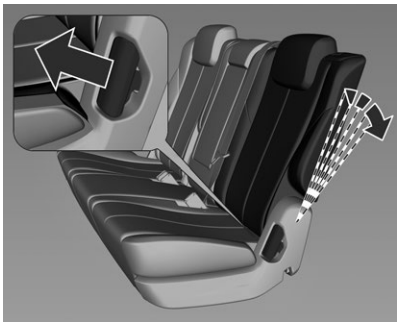
Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seatback could be thrown within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

Ensure all luggage and objects in the passenger compartment are secured.

Caution

Do not trap the seat belt when returning the seatback to the upright position.

Second Row Seats



To adjust the seat back:

1. Pull the lever.
2. Adjust the seat back.
3. Release the lever and allow the seat back to engage.

⚠ Warning

When second row seats are being adjusted, folded or tumbled, keep hands, arms, legs and feet away from moving parts.

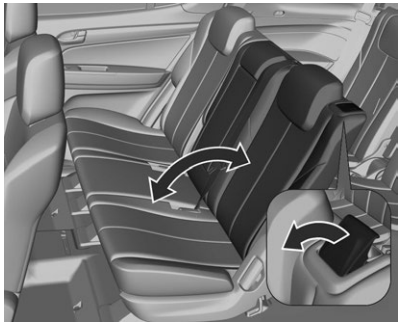
Ensure seats are fully engaged before driving.

Caution

Never sit on or place objects higher than the seats when they are in the tumbled position.

To allow access to the third row seats, fold the second row seats forwards:

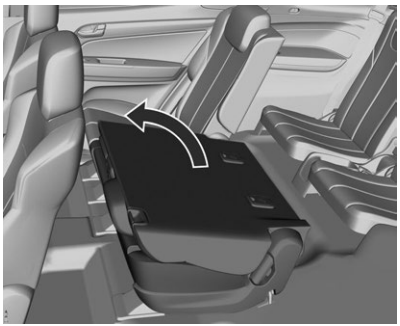
1. Push the head restraints down to their lowest position.



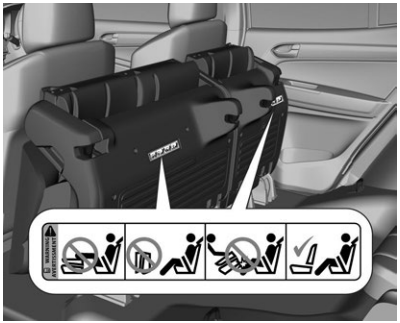
2. Unhook the seat belts and return them to their stowed position.
3. Pull the release lever and fold the seat back forwards.

Caution

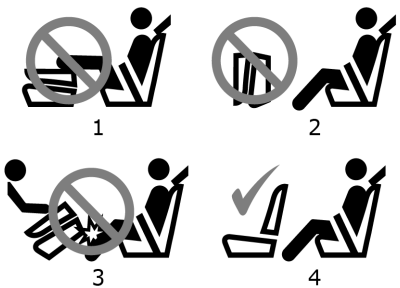
Never fold the seat backrest when the seat belts are buckled or pulled out.



4. Move the seat towards the front.
5. Fold up against the front seats.



Seat position instructions are displayed on the back of the seats.

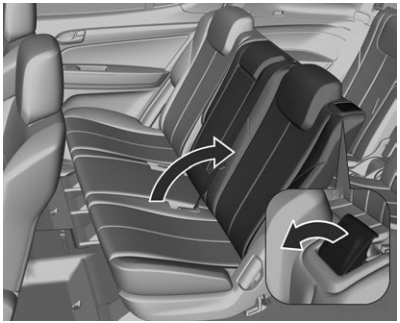


Note

- Do not place feet or legs on a folded seat (1).
- Do not keep the second row folded when passengers are seated in the third row or while the vehicle is moving (2).
- Be careful when tumbling the second row seats when passengers are seated in the third row (3).
- Correct position of the second and third row seats when travelling (4).

To raise the second row seats:

1. Raise the seat back rearwards.



2. Pull the release lever and raise the seat back until it engages.
3. Adjust the head restraints. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *23*.

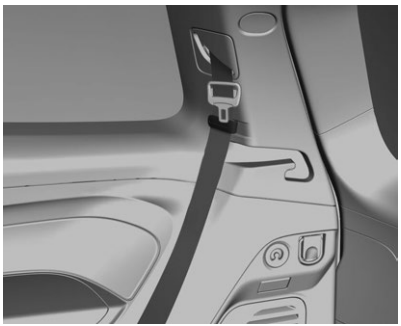
Third Row Seats

To fold the third row seats forwards:

1. Push the head restraints down to their lowest position.
2. Unbuckle the seat belts and return them to their stowed position.

Caution

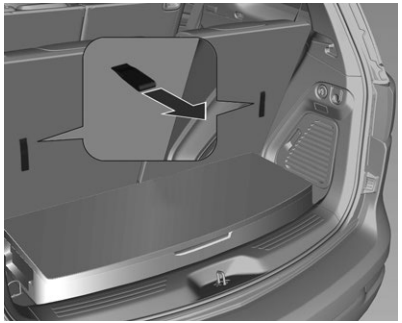
Never fold the seat backrest when the seat belts are buckled or pulled out.



3. Guide the seat belts through the belt holders.

Note

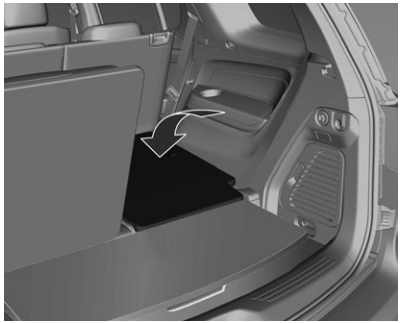
If the third row seats are unoccupied, guide the seat belts through the belt holders to avoid rattling while driving.



4. From the rear of the vehicle, pull the strap and release.

⚠ Warning

Never hang or load any objects on pull straps of the third Row Seats.



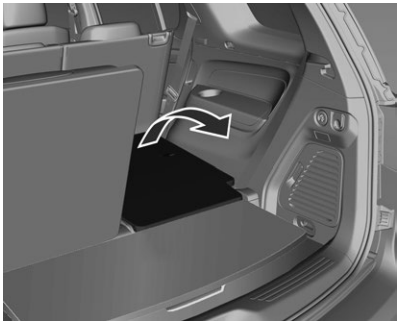
5. Push the seat back forwards.

To raise the third row seats:

1. Guide the seat belts through the belt holders.

⚠ Warning

Ensure the seat belts are removed from the belt holders when the seat is occupied.



2. From the rear of the vehicle, pull the strap rearwards until the seat back engages.
3. Adjust the head restraints. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *23*.

⚠ Warning

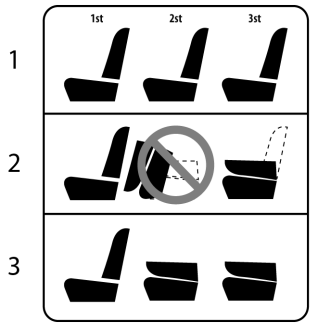
Removing second and/or third row seats is not recommended. If the seats must be removed, contact a Holden Dealer. Incorrect disassembly may cause serious injuries.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

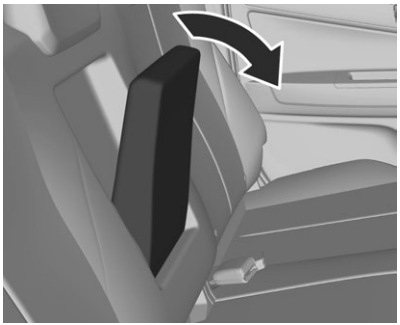
If a cargo barrier is installed, the third row seats should not be occupied.

Seat Positioning



- The correct seat configuration for passengers (1).
- This configuration should only be used for access to the third row seats (2).
- The correct configuration for cargo placement (3).

Armrest



Unfold the armrest by pulling downwards from the top.

Seat Belts

⚠ Warning

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

The belts lock during heavy acceleration or deceleration for the safety of the occupants.

Important: Make sure the seat belts are not damaged, frayed or become trapped. Replace damaged or frayed seat belts immediately. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Belt Force Limiters

On front seat three point belts, stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.

Belt Tensioners

In the event of a front, side or rear collision of a certain severity, the driver's and/or front passenger's three point seat belts are tightened.

⚠ Warning

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts or belt buckles) can deploy the belt tensioners with risk of injury.

- When the belt tensioners have been deployed, illuminates on the instrument panel. See *Safety Belt Reminders* ⇨ *65*.
- Deployed belt tensioners must be replaced.
- Belt tensioners are only triggered once.

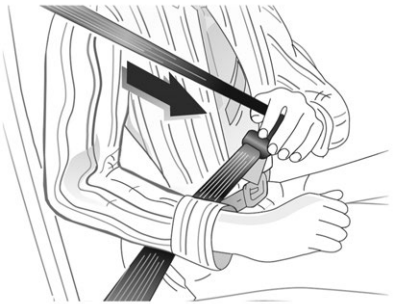
⚠ Warning

Do not attach or install objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt tensioners.

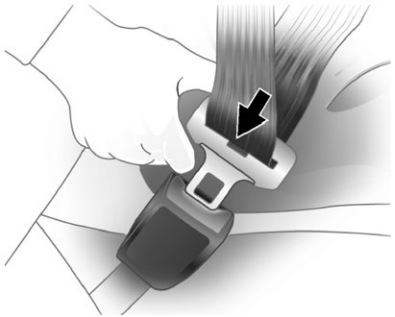
Do not make any modifications to belt tensioner components.

Three-Point Seat Belt

Fitting



Withdraw the belt from the reel, guide it untwisted across the body and push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. Tension the lap belt regularly while driving by tugging the shoulder belt.

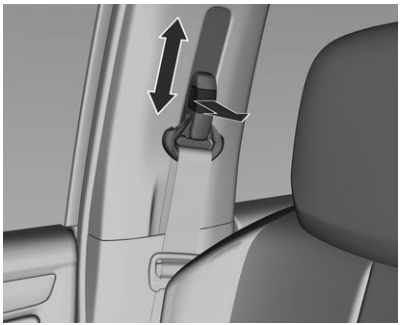


Loose or bulky clothing hinders the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the belt and your body.

⚠ Danger

The belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Height Adjustment



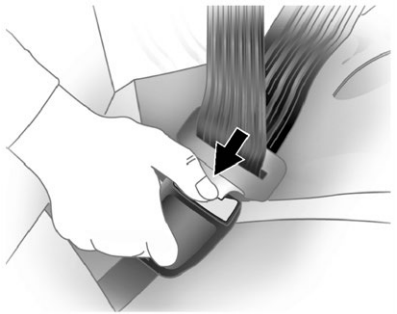
1. Pull the belt out slightly.
2. Pull the button.
3. Adjust height and engage.

⚠ Warning

Adjust the height so that the belt lies across the shoulder. It must not lie across the throat or upper arm.

Do not adjust while driving.

Removing



To release the belt, press the red button on the belt buckle.

The belt will automatically return to its original position, if required pull the buckle downward and then release it, so that the belt will be fully retracted.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

⚠ Warning

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seat belt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three point belt with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach, throughout the pregnancy.

Safety Belt Care

Seat Belts should be properly cared for and maintained.

Do not make any changes to the seat belt system.

Verify that the belts have no sign of deterioration or have not been jammed by a sharp object.

Seat Belt hardware should be kept dry and free of dust or debris. As necessary, exterior hard surfaces and seat belt webbing may be lightly cleaned with mild soap and water. Ensure there is not excessive dust or debris in the mechanism. If dust or debris exists in the system please see the dealer. Parts may need to be replaced to ensure proper functionality of the system.

⚠ Warning

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Caution

- The complete belt system should be inspected and verified by a technician on a regular basis.
- The seat belt, which was exposed to an accident, has to be replaced by a new one.

Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

Airbag System

When triggered, airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ Danger

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system.

The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Sitting too close to the airbag can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.

Always wear a seat belt.

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

⚠ Warning

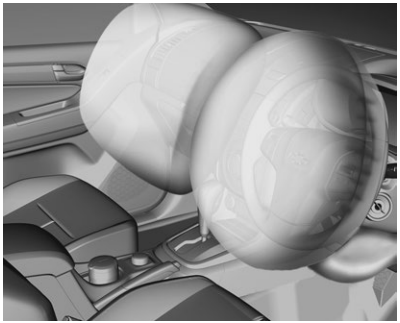
Airbags are part of the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) as they assist, but do not replace seat belts.

Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they deploy including speed, angle of collision and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is involved in a rollover. Seat belts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury.

Seat belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

Front Airbag System



The front airbag system consists of:

- A driver's airbag in the steering wheel
- A front passenger airbag in the instrument panel on the front passenger's side
- A driver's knee airbag in the lower part of the driver's side instrument panel.

These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

⚠ Warning

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

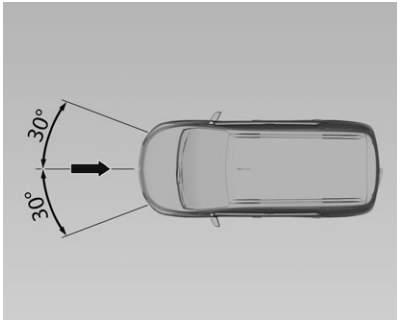
The driver should adjust the seat as far rearward as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Do not place any objects on or over the instrument panel or between an airbag and yourself.

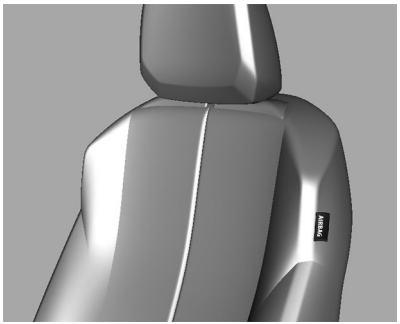
Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the instrument panel.



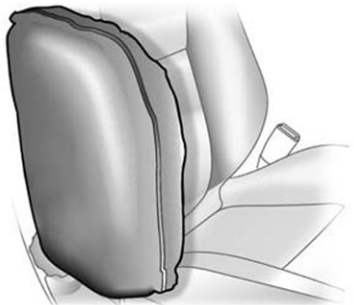
Front airbags will inflate in certain severe frontal or near frontal impacts. Front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the side, rear or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

Side Airbag System



Side Impact Airbags (SIAB) are stored in the outer side of the front seats.

SIAB are identified by a label with the words **SRS AIRBAG** on the seatback.



A SIAB will deploy in certain severe side impacts. SIAB are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the front, rear or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

Because there is limited time available to detect some side impacts, it is not possible for the SIAB to deploy in all serious accidents.

⚠ Warning

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers as they may impair the deployment of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB).

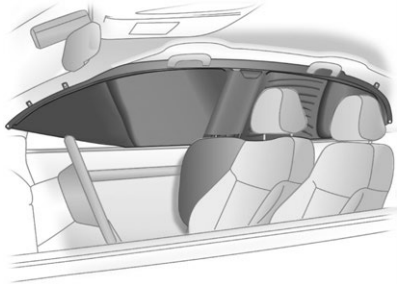
Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

Do not lean on, or sleep against, the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

Curtain Airbag System

- Curtain airbags are stored in the roof on each side of the vehicle.
- They can be identified by the word **AIRBAG** on the roof pillars.



- The curtain airbags deploy in most, but not all severe side impacts.
- The risk of injury to the head in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Refer to the illustration.

Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up light articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of the hanging items.

Do not hold onto the assist grips (above the doors) while seated in the vehicle.

Do not lean on, or sleep against the front or rear doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

Note

After an accident where airbags have deployed, the systems, associated parts and hardware must be checked and replaced as required.

Seats, associated parts and hardware must also be checked and replaced as required.

The airbag system should also be inspected after an accident if:

- The instrument panel area or steering wheel is scratched, cracked or damaged.
- The front seats and upholstery are damaged.
- The headliner or trim panels are damaged.

It is recommended that this work be carried out by a Holden Dealer or approved repairer.

Child Restraints

Child Restraint Systems

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

⚠ Warning

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only.

The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers and pets are suitably restrained. In most States and Territories of Australia and New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints and/or in certain locations within the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint and seat location is suitable for your child.

⚠ Warning

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint, as applicable to the type of restraint used.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

Child Restraint Seat Belt Locking Feature

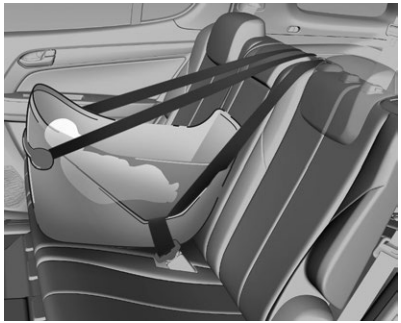
The second row seat belts have a child restraint locking feature. When engaged, this feature prevents the seat belt from being loosened without releasing the buckle.

To engage:

1. Clip the metal tongue into the buckle.
2. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.
3. To tighten the belt around the installed child seat, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
4. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 2 to 4.
5. To remove, press the release button on the buckle and allow the belt to fully retract.

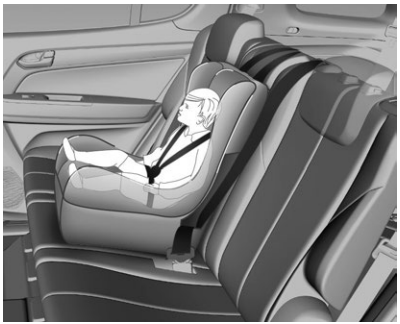
Selecting the Right System

Infants



Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young Children



Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster Seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

⚠ Warning

Always move the passenger's seat as far back as it will go before installing a booster seat. This locates the child as far from the passenger's airbag as possible.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

Older Children

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.

- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

Where to Put the Restraint

⚠ Warning

It is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fittings are to be used. Other types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

Australian States and Territories and New Zealand have laws restricting the seating of children in the front passenger seat. In most jurisdictions, children under 4 years should not be seated in the front passenger seat. Check your local road safety regulations before seating a child in the front seat.

Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Child restraints located in the second row must be attached to the child restraint anchorage points, located behind the second row rear seatbacks.

Do not place child restraints on the third row seats.

Note

If unsure about installing a child restraint, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

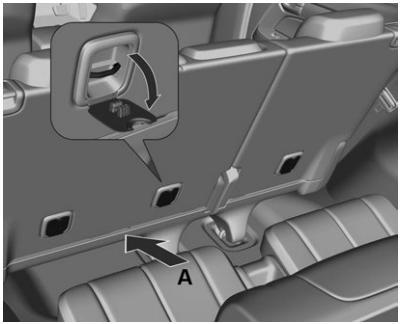
Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

Note

Ensure that seat belt buckles are placed out of the way of the child seat.

ISOFIX mounting brackets are indicated by a label on the seatback, as shown. In addition to the ISOFIX mounting, fasten the top-tether straps to the top-tether anchorage points. See *Top-Tether Child Restraint Systems* ⇨ *45*.

Top-Tether Child Restraint Systems



A. Front of vehicle

The child restraint tether anchors are located at the rear of the second row rear seats in line with the three, second row seating positions.

Note

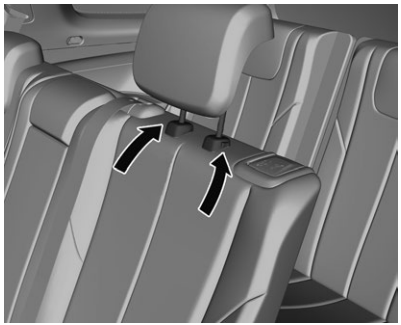
Use the child restraint anchors for their designed purpose only.

Single Tether Anchor

Note

If the child restraint has a single tether anchor, lift the headrest and pass the tether anchor between the headrest rods.

Double Tether Anchor



Note

If the child restraint has a double tether anchor, lift the headrest and pass the tether anchor around the headrest rods.

Child restraint installation

When using a child restraint, read the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint and follow the directions for fitment carefully.

The child restraint system should be secured in conjunction with the vehicle's seat belt.

Secure the child in the restraint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Storage

Storage Compartments
Instrument Panel Storage 47
Glove Box 48
Cupholders 48
Sunglasses Storage 49
Armrest Storage 49
Rear Storage 50

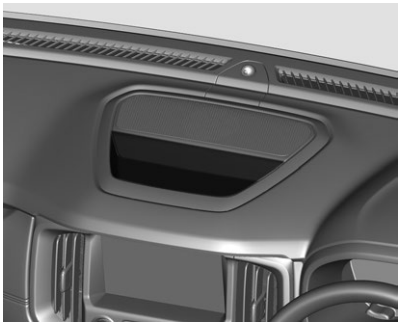
Additional Storage Features
Boot Cover 51

Roof Rack System
Roof Rack System 53

Information on Loading the Vehicle
Information on Loading the Vehicle 53

Storage Compartments

Instrument Panel Storage



Instrument panel upper storage.

Caution

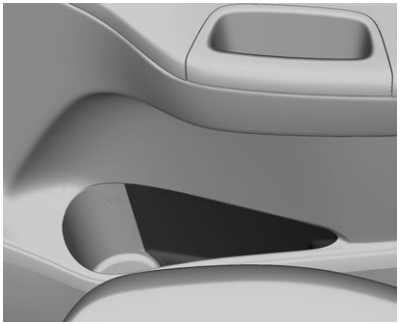
Do not leave glasses, CDs, CD cases or flammable items, e.g. cigarette lighter, in the tray when the vehicle is parked in direct sun

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

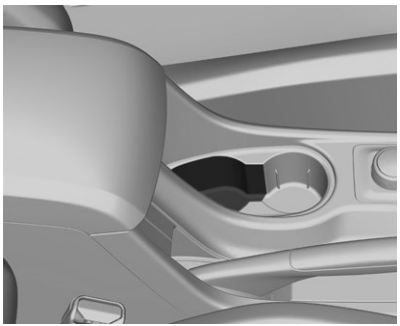
exposure or at high ambient temperatures as the tray may become very hot.

Front Storage



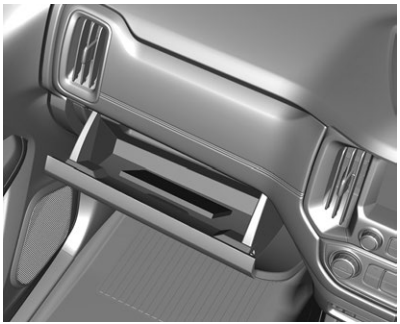
A storage compartment is located within each door.

A bottle holder is located at the front of the door storage compartment.



The vehicle may have a storage compartment located between the front seats.

Glove Box



To open, pull the handle.

⚠ Warning

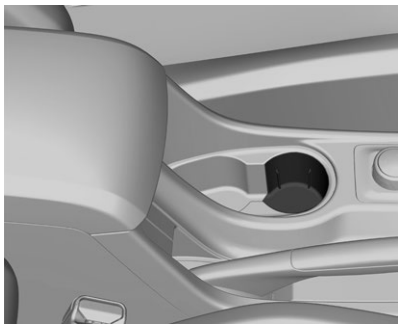
To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the glovebox door closed while driving.

Cupholders

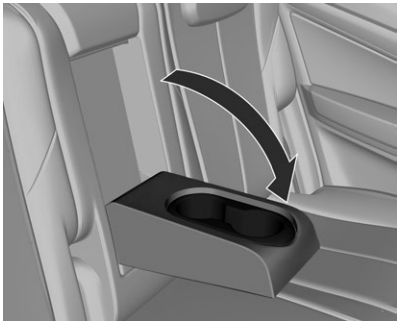
⚠ Warning

To avoid scalding, never place hot drinks in the cup holders.

Do not place uncovered containers of liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.



The vehicle may have cupholders located in the centre console, between the front seats.

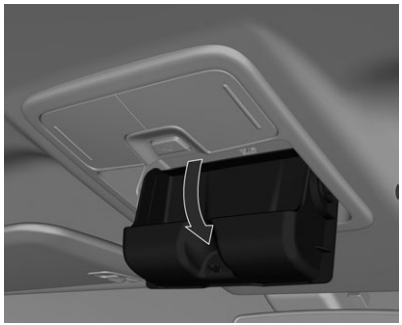


Cupholders are located in the second row armrest.

To access, fold the armrest down.

Cupholders are located at each side of the third row.

Sunglasses Storage

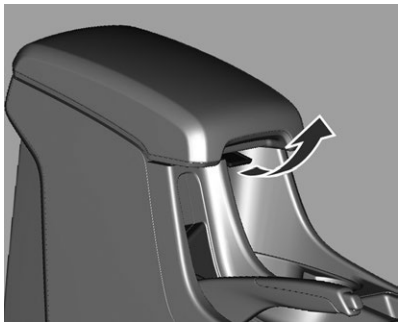


To open : Push the rear part of the cover.

To close : Push up the cover until it latches.

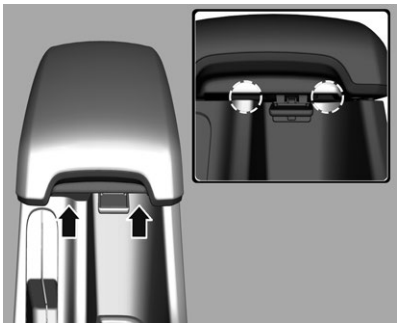
Do not use it to store heavy objects.

Armrest Storage

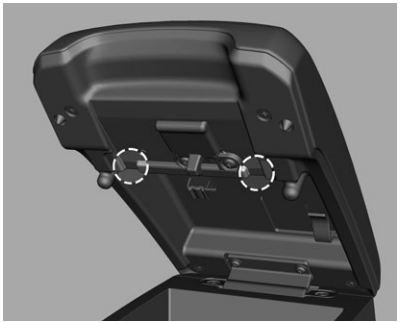


Press the latch and lift the armrest lid.

Cable Routing



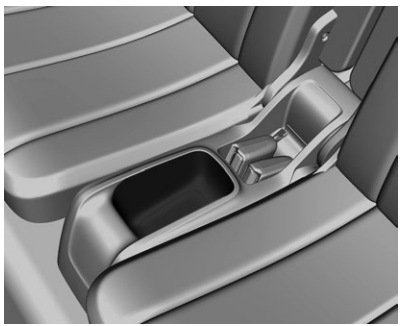
A USB and auxiliary port is located in the armrest storage compartment. To accommodate USB or auxiliary cable routing, recesses are provided.



Use the recesses as shown to prevent the cable from being pinched when the armrest is closed.

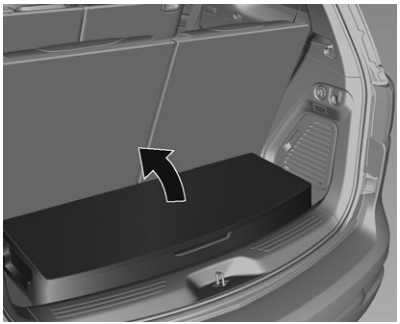
Rear Storage

Third Row Storage



Storage compartments are located in the third row.

Load Compartment Storage Box



- To open, lift the lid.
- The load compartment cover can be stored inside the storage box when not in use.

Additional Storage Features

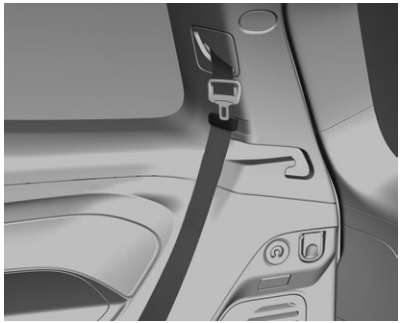
Boot Cover

The vehicle may have a load compartment cover.

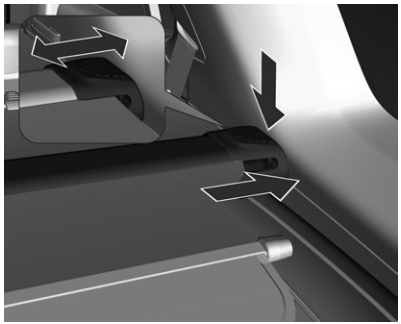
⚠ Warning

Do not place any items on top of the cargo blind.

Do not allow any items underneath to contact the cargo blind.



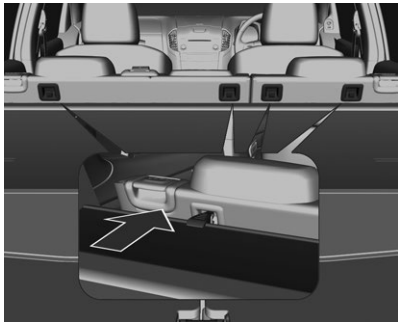
1. Guide the seat belts through the belt holders.



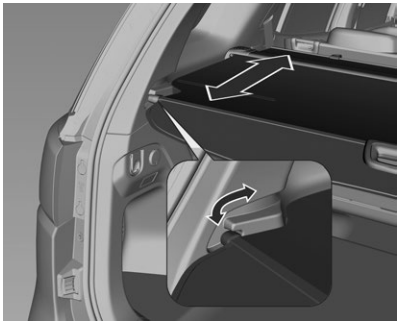
To install the cover:

2. Fold the third row of seats.

3. Insert the cover into the recess on the driver's side.
4. Insert the cover into the recess on the passenger's side to engage.



5. Push the cover forwards and engage it in the hooks on the back of the second row seats.

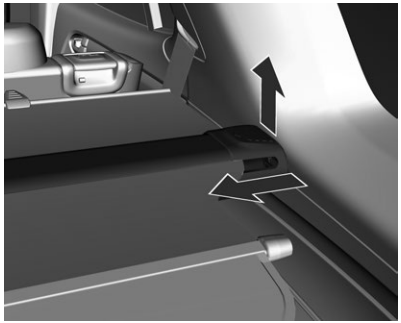


To extend the cover:

6. Use the handle to pull the cover rearwards.
7. Engage the cover in the latches on either side.

To retract the cover:

8. Use the handle to pull the cover rearwards slightly.
9. Gently roll the cover up while holding the handle.

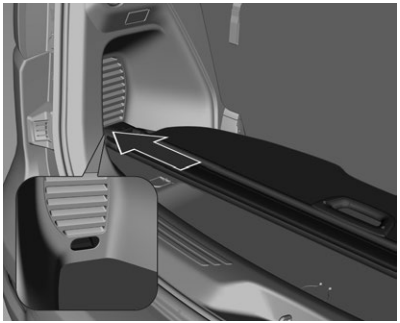


To remove the cover:

10. Retract the cover.
11. Pull the bar at each side of the cover towards the centre.
12. Lift and remove the cover from the side recesses.

To stow the cover:

When not in use, stow the cover in the recess in the load compartment storage box.



13. Retract the cover.
14. Ensure the top is facing upwards, then insert the cover into the recess on the passenger's side.
15. Insert the cover into the recess on the driver's side to engage.

Note
Pull the cover handle rearwards to fit the cover into the storage box and allow the lid to close.

16. To release the cover remove one side of the cover, then the other side.

Roof Rack System

- Distribute the load evenly and secure tightly with straps.
- When carrying loads on the roof rack (elevated load), avoid hard braking, abrupt swerving or sharp steering.

  Roof rack elevated loads alter the vehicle's road handling.

⚠ Warning

The total elevated load, including the weight of the cross bars, must not exceed 100 kg.

Distribute the load evenly.

Note
The weight of the cross bars and the load must be included when calculating the total vehicle load.

Information on Loading the Vehicle

⚠ Danger

Do not stack objects higher than the front seats.

Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Serious injuries or death can result.

- Secure objects to prevent from sliding or being thrown out.
- Distribute load weight evenly.
- Adjust the tyre pressures and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.

  See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *281*.
- Place heavier objects at the bottom.
- Do not drive with the tailgate open.

- Do not exceed the maximum load weights.

  See *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *277*.

- Do not place any objects on the instrument panel.
- Ensure the backrests are securely engaged.
- Do not place unsecured objects in the passenger compartment.

Instruments and Controls

Instrument Panel Overview
Instrument Panel Overview 56

Controls
Steering Wheel Adjustment 57
Steering Wheel Controls 58
Horn 58
Windshield Wiper/Washer 59
Rear Window Wiper/Washer ... 60
Power Outlets 61

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 62
Speedometer 62
Odometer 63
Trip Odometer 63
Tachometer 63
Fuel Gauge 63
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 64
Turn Signal 64
Safety Belt Reminders 65
Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light 66
Charging System Light 66
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 66
Brake System Warning Light ... 67
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 67
Four-Wheel-Drive Light 68
Descent Control System 68
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light 68
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 68
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light 68
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 69
Traction Control System Warning Light 69
Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light 69
Pre-Heat Light 69
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light 70
Engine Oil Pressure Light 70
Low Fuel Warning Light 70
Immobiliser Light 71
High-Beam On Light 71
Front Fog Lamp Light 71
Rear Fog Light (If equipped) ... 71
Lamps On Reminder 71
Cruise Control Light 71
Trailer Indicator Light 71

Information Displays
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 71

Vehicle Messages
Vehicle Messages 74
Warning Chimes 74
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages 74
Brake System Messages 75
Cruise Control Messages 75
Door Ajar Messages 75
Engine Cooling System Messages 75
Engine Oil Messages 76
Engine Power Messages 76
Fuel System Messages 76
Diesel Particulate Filter Messages 76
Key and Lock Messages 77
Lamp Messages 77
Object Detection System Messages 77
Ride Control System Messages 77
Airbag System Messages 77
Anti-theft Alarm System Messages 77

Service Vehicle Messages 78
Steering System Messages 78
Tyre Messages 78
Transmission Messages 79
Vehicle Reminder Messages . . . 80
Vehicle Speed Messages 80

Vehicle Personalisation
Vehicle Personalisation 80

Instrument Panel Overview

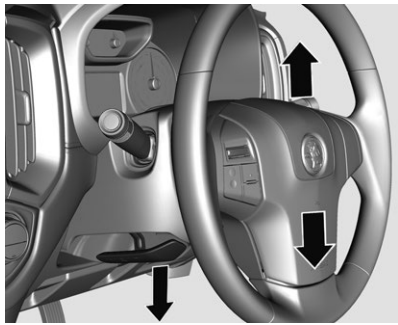
Note
Not all indicators may be available.

1. *Engine Oil Pressure Light* ⇨ *70*
2. *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ *66*
3. *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light* ⇨ *69*
4. *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ *67*
5. *Cruise Control Light* ⇨ *71*
6. *Safety Belt Reminders* ⇨ *65*
7. *Turn Signal* ⇨ *64*
8. *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light* ⇨ *68*

9. *Vehicle Ahead Indicator ⇨ 68*
10. *Brake System Warning Light ⇨ 67*
11. *Traction Control System Warning Light ⇨ 69*
12. *Safety Belt Reminders ⇨ 65*
13. *Charging System Light ⇨ 66*
14. *Fuel Gauge ⇨ 63*
15. *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge ⇨ 64*
16. *Driver Information Centre (DIC) ⇨ 71*
17. *Lamps On Reminder ⇨ 71*
18. *Four-Wheel-Drive Light ⇨ 68*
19. *Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light ⇨ 68*
20. *Descent Control System (DCS) ⇨ 197*
21. *Turn Signal ⇨ 64*
22. *High-Beam On Light ⇨ 71*
23. *Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light ⇨ 70*
24. *Immobiliser Light ⇨ 71*
25. *Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light ⇨ 66*
26. *Trailer Indicator Light ⇨ 71*
27. *Pre-Heat Light ⇨ 69*
28. *Rear Fog Light (If equipped) ⇨ 71*
29. *Front Fog Lamp Light ⇨ 71*

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment



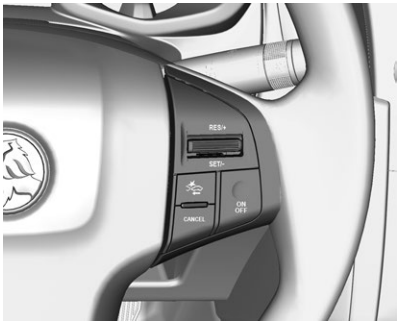
Unlock the lever, adjust the steering wheel, then engage the lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

Steering Wheel Controls

The infotainment system can be operated by the controls on the steering wheel.

See *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *92* or *Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped)* ⇨ *145*.



The Cruise Control and the Forward Collision Alert can be operated by the controls on the steering wheel.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *199*.

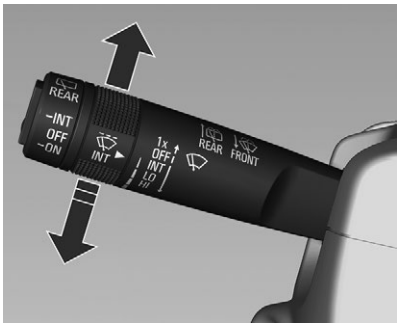
See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *201*.

Horn

Press .

Windshield Wiper/Washer

Windscreen Wiper



Caution
Do not operate the windscreen wipers on dry glass or when covered with snow or ice, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

1x : Single wipe

OFF : Off

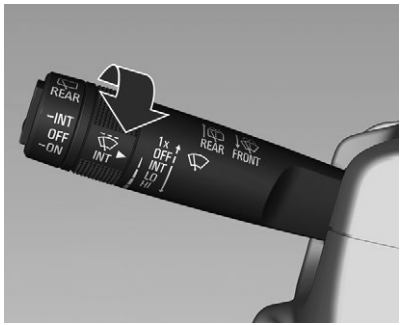
INT : Intermittent operation

LO : Continuous wipe, slow speed

HI : Continuous wipe, fast speed

For a single wipe of the windscreen when the windscreen wipers are off, push the lever upwards.

Adjustable Wiper Interval



During intermittent operation, adjust the wiper interval:

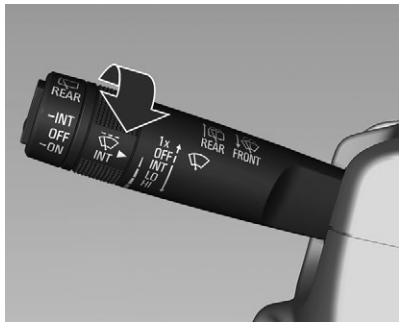
- For frequent intervals, rotate the wheel downwards.
- For longer intervals, rotate the wheel upwards.

Automatic wiping with rain sensor (If equipped)

INT : automatic wiping with rain sensor

The rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor (If equipped)

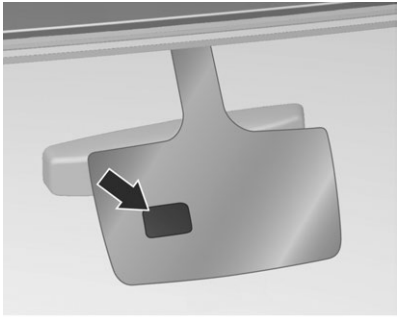


Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity:

Low sensitivity : Turn adjuster wheel upwards

High sensitivity : Turn adjuster wheel downwards

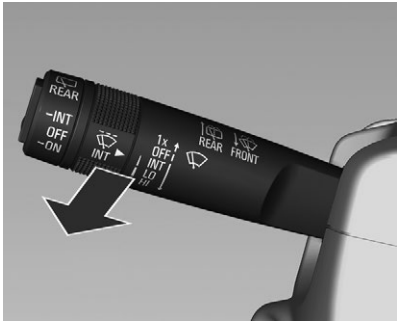
Caution
Switch off the windscreen wiper and automatic operation with rain sensor in car washes.



Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

If you move the wiper to rain sensor mode or turn the adjuster wheel from low sensitivity to high sensitivity when the ignition is switched on, the windscreen wipers operate once to check the system.

Windscreen Washer

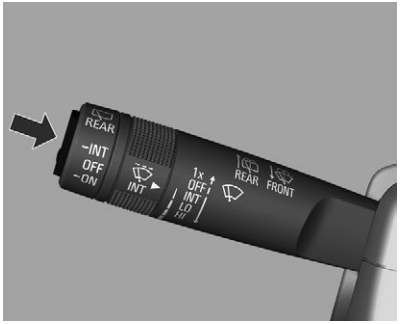


Pull the lever rearwards to wash the windscreen.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wipers operate.

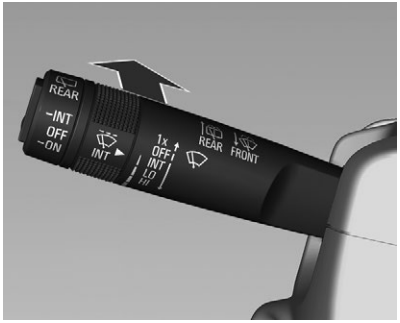
Caution
Do not operate the windscreen washer for more than a few seconds or when the washer fluid reservoir is empty. Do not spray washer fluid on the windscreen in freezing weather. Switch the wipers off when in a car wash.

Rear Window Wiper/ Washer



To activate the rear window wiper/ washer:

- Press the lower position for continuous operation.
- Press the upper position for intermittent operation.
- Return to the middle position to turn off.



To wash the rear window:

- Push the lever forwards.

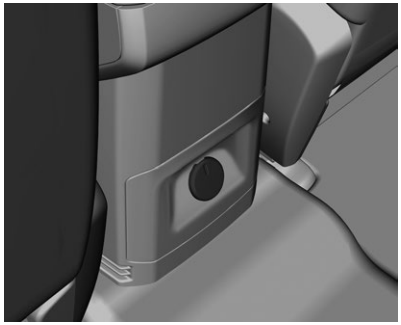
  Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wipers operate.

Note

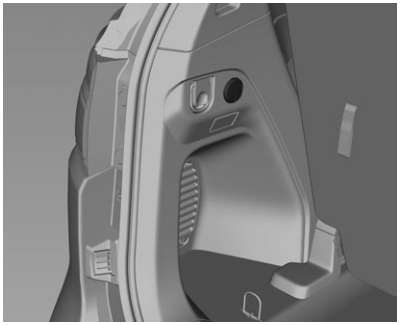
The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windscreen wiper is on and reverse gear is engaged. See Auto wipe in reverse gear under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *80*.

Caution
Do not use the rear window wiper/washer if the rear window is frozen. Switch the wipers off when in a car wash.

Power Outlets



The 12V power outlets are located in front of the shift lever and at the rear of the centre console.



A power outlet is located on the passenger side of the load compartment.

Pull the cap outwards to use and replace when not in use.

⚠ Warning

It is dangerous for the driver of a vehicle to attach or remove accessories from the power

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

socket while driving. It may distract the driver's attention, putting the occupants of the vehicle and other road users at risk.

- Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 watts.
- The power outlet is deactivated 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off or a door is opened.
- The power outlet does not operate if the battery voltage is low.
- Do not connect electrical charging devices or batteries.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

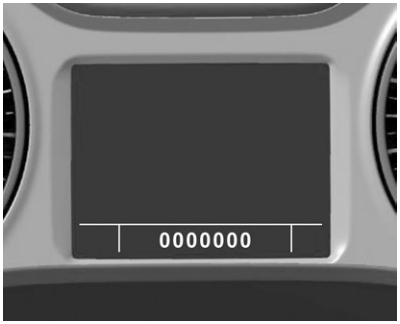
The following warning lights and reminders may appear on the instrument panel.

A chime sounds with most warning lights and indicators.

Speedometer

Shows vehicle speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Odometer



Shows distance travelled in kilometres.

Trip Odometer

The Trip display shows the current distance travelled since the last reset of the trip odometer.

See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *71*.

Tachometer

Shows engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (RPM).

Drive at a low engine speed/range for each gear, as much as possible.

⚠ Warning

Do not allow the needle to remain in the warning/red zone.

Fuel Gauge

Shows the level of fuel in the tank.

If the fuel level is low:

- illuminates.
- A chime sounds.
- A message is displayed. Refuel immediately.

⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, stop the vehicle and switch the engine off.

Note

- The arrow on the fuel gauge symbol indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.
- Never run the tank dry.
- If you operate the ignition switch while refuelling, the fuel gauge may not indicate the correct fuel level.
- On inclines, the fuel gauge may not indicate the correct fuel level due to movement of the fuel in the tank.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Shows the engine coolant temperature.

Left area : Regular operating temperature not yet reached

Central area : Normal operating temperature

Right area : Temperature too high

If the engine is too hot, the gauge pointer will move toward the red area, a warning chime will activate, and the Driver Information Centre will also display a message. Seek the assistance of a Holden Dealer.

See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *71*.

⚠ Warning

Do not continue driving with the temperature gauge needle in the red area. The engine is too hot.

Continued operation of an overheated engine will result in severe engine damage. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *229*.

Turn Signal

- Push the lever in the same direction the steering wheel is turned.
- ⇦⇨ flashes.

  ⇦⇨ also flashes when the hazard warning is activated.

- If ⇦⇨ flashes quickly, see *Bulb Replacement* ⇨ *234*.

See *Fuses* ⇨ *241* and *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *84*.

Safety Belt Reminders

for driver's seat illuminates or flashes red.

When the ignition is switched on, this control indicator is activated and remains active for some seconds, to remind the driver to fasten the seat belt.

Soon after the ignition is switched on or the engine is started, the control indicator begins to flash, and also a chime sounds, for a few seconds. Then the control indicator stops flashing and illuminates until the driver seat belt is fastened.

Additionally, if the driver remains with the seat belt unfastened while the vehicle is moving, after reaching a specific distance or speed, a chime sounds and the control indicator flashes for several seconds.

If the driver seat belt is already fastened, neither the control indicator nor the chime comes on.

See *Seat Belts* ⇨ *33*.

If Seat Belt Reminder is active the Rear Parking Assistance chime will not operate.

Passenger Seat Belt Reminder (If equipped)

2 for passenger's seat illuminates or flashes red.

When the vehicle is started this light flashes and a chime may sound to remind passengers to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled.

This cycle continues several times if the passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the passenger seat belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger seat belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

Rear Passenger Seat Belt Reminder (If equipped)

for rear passenger's seat appears on Driver Information Centre.

When the engine starts, the symbols will be displayed in the lower part of the DIC. If a rear seat belt is buckled, the corresponding symbol will dim.

Once the vehicle is travelling over 10 km/h for approximately 10 seconds, the symbols will extinguish. If a rear seat belt is unbuckled whilst driving, a chime will sound and the corresponding symbol will flash in the DIC.

Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light

- The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- If the warning light does not illuminate, does not extinguish after few seconds or illuminates while driving, there is a problem with the airbag or belt tensioner system.

⚠ Warning

Have any fault in the airbag or belt tensioner system repaired immediately by a Holden Dealer.

See *Seat Belts* ⇨ *33* and *Airbag System* ⇨ *37*.

Charging System Light

The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

If illuminates while the engine is running, there is a problem with the charging system:

1. Stop the vehicle and switch off the engine.
2. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

- The warning light illuminates when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- If the warning light illuminates or flashes while driving, there is a problem with the emission monitoring system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

- The warning light may also illuminate to indicate there is a malfunction in the Diesel Particle Filter (DPF). Contact a Holden Dealer.
- To avoid serious damage to the vehicle, reduce vehicle speed, avoid hard acceleration, avoid steep uphill gradients and if towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo as soon as possible.

Brake System Warning Light

(!) illuminates red.

Illuminates when the parking brake is applied, if the brake fluid level is too low, or if there is a brake system failure, see *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *231*.

⚠ Danger

If the brake system warning light illuminates, check the brake fluid level and contact an authorised dealer immediately.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low, do not drive the vehicle.

This may mean your brakes are not working properly. Driving with malfunctioning brakes can cause personal injuries and damage to your vehicle and other property.

Illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the manual parking brake is applied, see *Parking Brake* ⇨ *195*.

If the parking brake has not been fully released and the vehicle is moving, after reaching a certain speed, the chime comes on and the Driver Information Centre also displays a message, see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *71*.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

The (ABS) warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show the light is working.

Carefully stop the vehicle and turn the engine off if the light:

- Does not flash or stays on when the ignition key is turned on.
- Remains on while driving.

If both the (ABS) and the (!) warning lights illuminate, there is a problem with both the ABS and the braking system. Contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

Note

The braking system will still operate, but without the assistance of the ABS.

See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ *194*.

Four-Wheel-Drive Light

The four-wheel-drive light comes on when the transfer case is shifted into four-wheel drive and the front axle engages.

Some delay between the shifting and the light coming on is normal.

See *Four-Wheel Drive* ⇨ *190*.

Descent Control System

illuminates or flashes green.

Flashes to indicate that the Descent Control System (DCS) is activated, reducing the vehicle's speed. This will occur at speeds between approximately 4 km/h and 30 km/h.

Illuminates after pressing the button to indicate that the system is enabled if vehicle speed is below 50 km/h.

See *Descent Control System (DCS)* ⇨ *197*.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light

If equipped, located in the centre of the instrument cluster illuminates briefly while starting the engine. If it does not illuminate, have the vehicle serviced.

illuminates green when LDW is on and ready to operate.

changes to amber and flashes to indicate that a lane marking has been crossed without using a turn signal in that direction.

See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* ⇨ *210*.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator

If equipped, illuminates green when a vehicle is detected ahead.

The indicator will display amber when you are following a detected vehicle ahead too closely.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *201*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light

- The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- The light flashes while driving, to show that the ESC is actively helping the vehicle with road grip and stability.

- If the light illuminates or does not extinguish while driving, contact a Holden Dealer immediately.
- See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *71* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *197*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light

- The OFF warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- If the light does not illuminate, contact a Holden Dealer.
- OFF illuminates when the ESC is deactivated.
- See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *71* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *197*.

Traction Control System Warning Light

illuminates or flashes amber.

Illuminates

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. If the system is working normally, the indicator goes out.

If the indicator does not go out after a few seconds, there is a fault in the system. It is possible to keep driving without Traction Control System (TCS) activated.

Have the cause of the fault fixed by a Holden dealer.

Flashes

The indicator will flash during TCS, Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and/or Trailer Sway Control (TSC) activation.

See *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ *196*. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *197*. See *Trailer Sway Control (TSC)* ⇨ *218*

Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light

TC illuminates amber.

Illuminates when the system is deactivated.

See *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ *196*.

Pre-Heat Light

The preheating system activates only if the outside temperature is low.

When the ignition is turned on, may illuminate and will stay illuminated until the engine is sufficiently warmed.

See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *183*.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light

For vehicles with Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), illuminates briefly when the engine is started.

When the Light Is On Steady

If the light illuminates steady, this indicates that one or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated.

A Driver Information Centre (DIC) tyre pressure message may also display. See *Tyre Messages* ⇨ *78*.

Stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres to the pressure value shown on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *247*.

When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on at every ignition cycle. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *250*.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

- The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

If the light illuminates while driving:

- The oil pressure is dangerously low.

  Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and check the engine oil level.
- See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *226*.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the light illuminated. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Caution
Engine damage may result if you keep driving. Do not run the engine. If the oil level is normal, have the system checked by the nearest Holden Dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light

The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show the light is working.

- The light illuminates when the fuel tank is approaching empty.

  Add fuel as soon as possible.
- If the fuel tank is run to empty, the fuel system must be bled. See *Diesel Fuel System Bleeding* ⇨ *234*.

See *Fuel for Diesel Engines* ⇨ *212* and *Fuel System Messages* ⇨ *76*.

Immobiliser Light

- The warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- If the light remains on, contact a Holden Dealer.
- See *Immobiliser* ⇨ *16*.

High-Beam On Light

The indicator light illuminates when headlamp high beam is on.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *83*.

Front Fog Lamp Light

The vehicle may have front fog lamps.

illuminates in the instrument cluster when the lamps are in use.

See *Front Fog Lamps* ⇨ *85*.

Rear Fog Light (If equipped)

illuminates amber.

It illuminates when the rear fog light is on.

Lamps On Reminder

illuminates green.

It illuminates when the exterior lamps are on, see *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *82*.

Cruise Control Light

- illuminates on the instrument panel when the cruise control has been set.
- The light extinguishes when cruise control is turned off.
- See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *199*.

Trailer Indicator Light

Illuminates when the trailer is connected to your vehicle. It will go out when the trailer is disconnected.

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) is located in the instrument cluster. The DIC displays information about your vehicle. It also displays warning messages if a system problem is detected.

See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *74*.

Selecting Functions

The menus and functions can be selected by the buttons on the turn signal lever.

Press **MENU** to switch between the menus.

The following menus can be selected:

- Vehicle Pages (Vehicle Information Menu)
- Trip Computer (Trip/Fuel Information Menu)
- ECO Menu

Turn the adjusting knob to scroll through the items in each menu or to set a numeric value.

Press the **SET/CLR** button to select a function or to confirm a message.

Note

The following describes possible options. Some may not be available in your vehicle.

Vehicle Pages

- Battery Voltage.
- Coolant Temperature.
- Engine and Idle Hours.
- Tyre Load (if available).
- Transmission Fluid Temperature.
- Speed Warning.
- Remaining Oil Life (if available).
- Tyre Pressure (if available).

Battery Voltage

This displays the current battery voltage.

Coolant Temperature

Displays the current coolant temperature.

Engine and Idle Hours

The hour meter is used to display the number of hours the engine has been running.

Tyre Load

This display shows the current tyre load. The tyre loads that can be selected are:

Light : Light loaded vehicle.

ECO : Best Economy.

Max : Heavy loaded vehicle.

Transmission Fluid Temperature

Displays the current transmission fluid temperature.

Speed Warning

This mode allows you to set a warning signal for when a desired speed is exceeded.

To set the speed warning, press the **SET/CLR** button and use the thumb wheel to select the desired speed. Press **SET/CLR** to confirm.

Remaining Oil Life

Displays the current percentage of remaining oil life.

To reset the engine oil life system see *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *228*.

Tyre Pressure

Displays the current tyre pressure.

Trip Pages

- Digital Speedometer.
- Combined Trip 1 and Trip 2.
- Fuel Range.
- Instantaneous fuel economy.
- Timer.
- Outside Air Temperature.

Digital Speedometer

Indicates the vehicle speed.

Combined Trip 1 and Trip 2

Displays the current distance travelled, average vehicle fuel consumption and average vehicle speed since the last reset.

To reset, press and hold the **SET/CLR** button.

Fuel Range

The Fuel Range display shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling.

The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

When the fuel range estimate is less than 64 km, a **Fuel Level Low** message will appear on the Driver Information Centre and the low fuel control indicator will start to flash.

See *Low Fuel Warning Light* ⇨ *70*.

The distance can vary depending on driving patterns.

Note

The display may differ from the actual distance for remaining fuel depending upon circumstances.

The driving distance for remaining fuel can change by the driver behaviour, the road conditions and the vehicle speed as it is calculated according to the changing fuel efficiency.

Instantaneous Fuel Economy

Indicates the instantaneous fuel economy of the vehicle to the user reflecting the effect of acceleration on fuel consumption

Timer

The timer function measures the time that has passed since the last reset, using the elapsed time.

To reset the driving time to zero, press and hold the **SET/CLR** button for more than 1 second.

Outside Air Temperature

Displays the outside temperature in degrees Celsius (°C).

Eco Pages

- Eco Index.
- Economy Trend.
- Fuel Economy.

Eco Index

This feature provides feedback to the driver with a relative value of how fuel efficient they are driving. The percentage is determined

based on current fuel consumption compared to what is expected by the calibration settings.

A leaf is shown at ECO Index Page when driving economically; this is achieved when the indicator is in the ECO area.

Economy Trend

Displays the average fuel consumption of the last 50 km travelled. Each column presents the average fuel consumption of the last 5 km.

Fuel Economy

The current instantaneous fuel economy with the average and best obtained are indicated by two labelled arrows. The indicator slides left and right within the bar depending the current instantaneous fuel economy. The selectable ranges are 25 km, 100 km, and 500 km.

Vehicle Messages

Messages are displayed on the DIC or may be audible as a warning chime.

- Not all messages are displayed on all vehicles.
- Some settings can be changed in the personalisation menu.

See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *80*.

Caution
Some of the following messages require immediate action to prevent vehicle or engine damage.

Warning Chimes

Warning chimes may sound as follows.

When Starting the Engine or while Driving

- If a seat belt is not fastened.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with the parking brake applied.
- If a warning message appears in the DIC.
- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If parking assist is activated.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds the adjusted speed value.

When the Vehicle is Parked and/or a Door is Opened

- Until the engine starts, with the key in the ignition switch.
- When exterior lamps are on with the engine off.

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

Battery Saver Active

This message displays when the vehicle detects that the battery voltage is low. The battery saver system may disable some vehicle features for battery saving and a message is displayed. Turn off unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

Low Battery

This message displays when the battery voltage is low.

Service Battery Charging System

This message displays when there is a fault in the battery charging system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Brake System Messages

Brake Fluid Low

- The message is displayed when the brake fluid level is low.
- See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *231*.

Release Parking Brake

- The message is displayed when the parking brake is on.
- Release the parking brake while driving the vehicle.

Hill Start Assist is Active

- The message is displayed when Hill Start Assist (HSA) is active and is preventing rollback when driving off, while on an incline.
- See *Hill Start Assist (HSA)* ⇨ *195*.

Reduce Speed for Descent Control System (DCS)

- The message is displayed when Descent Control System (DCS) is active and vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h.
- See *Descent Control System (DCS)* ⇨ *197*.

Cruise Control Messages

Cruise Set to (...) Km/h

This message displays when the cruise control is set and shows the speed it was set to, see *Cruise Control* ⇨ *199*.

Door Ajar Messages

Door Open

The message is displayed when one or more doors are open.

Close the doors completely.

Bonnet Open

The message will display when the bonnet is open.

Close the bonnet completely.

Rear Access Open

The message will display when the tailgate is open.

Close the tailgate completely.

Engine Cooling System Messages

Engine Overheated – Idle Engine

- The message displays and a continuous chime sounds if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allow the engine to idle for a few seconds, then turn the engine off, to avoid severe damage.
- The message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

Caution
Engine damage may result if the engine is turned off immediately. Idle for a few seconds, then turn off.

Engine Oil Messages

Change Engine Oil Soon

This message displays when the engine oil needs to be changed. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *226* for more information.

Engine Power Messages

Engine Power is Reduced

- The message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced.

Note

- Although the vehicle may still be drivable, the accelerator input available may be limited, resulting in reduced power.
- Have the problem repaired by a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

Fuel System Messages

Fuel Level Low

The message displays when the fuel level is low and remains displayed until the fuel tank is filled above the low fuel level.

Water in Fuel – Contact Service

This message displays when the fuel sensor detects water in the diesel fuel. See *Fuel Filter* ⇨ *233* or contact a Holden Dealer.

Diesel Particulate Filter Messages

Cleaning Exhaust Filter. Please Continue to Drive

This message will be displayed on the DIC when diesel particulate filter cleaning is required. To clean the filter, continue driving the vehicle until the warning message extinguishes. This may take up to 30 minutes. See *Diesel Particulate Filter* ⇨ *186*.

Cleaning Exhaust Filter. You Must Continue to Drive

If the auto self clean has been interrupted several times, this message may be displayed and a chime may sound. Do not interrupt the cleaning process. Continue driving the vehicle until the warning message extinguishes.

If the SVS (Service Vehicle Soon) message turns on, the self-cleaning process is not feasible. Contact a dealer soon.

If the diesel particulate filter is not cleaned soon, the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Lamp) will illuminate and the 'Engine Power is Reduced' message will be displayed. Vehicle performance will be limited.

See *Diesel Particulate Filter* ⇨ *186*, *Engine Power Messages* ⇨ *76* and *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ *66*.

Key and Lock Messages

Replace Battery in Remote Key

This message displays when the battery in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs to be replaced.

Lamp Messages

Check Brake Lamps

This message displays if a brake lamp bulb needs to be replaced.

See *Taillamps* ⇨ *237*.

Object Detection System Messages

Park Assist Off

This message displays when the Parking Assist system has been turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled.

Service Parking Assist

This message displays if there is a problem with the Parking Assist system. Do not use this system to help you park. See your dealer for service.

Ride Control System Messages

Service ESC

This message displays if there is a problem with the Electronic Stability Control and/or Traction Control system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

ESC OFF

This message displays when the Electronic Stability Control system has been switched off manually by pressing OFF on the instrument panel.

Traction Control ON

This message displays when the Traction Control (TC) system has been switched on manually by pressing OFF on the instrument panel.

Traction Control OFF

This message displays when the Traction Control (TC) system has been switched off manually by pressing OFF on the instrument panel.

Airbag System Messages

Service Airbag

This message displays if there is a problem with the airbag system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Anti-theft Alarm System Messages

Theft Attempted

This message displays if a theft has been attempted.

While the ignition is on, press **MENU** to clear the message. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *80* and *Anti-theft Alarm System* ⇨ *15*.

Service Theft Deterrent System

This message displays if there is a problem with the vehicle security system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Service Vehicle Messages

Service Vehicle Soon

This message will be displayed on the DIC if there is a problem with the vehicle. Take your vehicle to a dealer for service.

Steering System Messages

Steering Assist Is Reduced Drive With Care

This message may display if a problem occurs with the electric power steering system. If this message appears, steering effort may be slightly higher than normal. The vehicle is still safe to drive. Use caution while in reduced assist mode. If this message is persistent or appears repeatedly, take the vehicle to your dealer for service. See *Steering* ⇨ *179*.

Service Power Steering

This message displays when there is a problem with electric power steering. Seek the assistance of a Holden Dealership or Authorised Repair Shop. See *Steering* ⇨ *179*.

Tyre Messages

Service Tyre Monitor System

If equipped with the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays if a part on the system is not working properly. The tyre pressure light also flashes and then remains on during the same ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light* ⇨ *70*. Several conditions may cause this message to appear. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *250*. If the warning comes on and stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. See your dealer.

Tyre Learning Active

If equipped with the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the system is relearning the tyre positions on your vehicle. The tyre positions must be relearned after rotating the tyres or after replacing a sensor. See, *Tyre Rotation* ⇨ *252*, *Tyre Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ *248*, and *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *247*.

Tyre Pressure Low Add Air To Tyre

If equipped with the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the pressure in one or more of the vehicle's tyres is low. This message also displays with a vehicle picture to indicate the location of the low tyre. The low tyre pressure warning light will also come on. See *Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light* ⇨ *70*. You can receive more than one tyre pressure message at a time. If a tyre pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Have the tyre pressures checked and set to those shown on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *247* and *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *277*. The DIC also

shows the tyre pressure values. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *71*.

Transmission Messages

Service Transmission

This message displays if there is a problem with the automatic transmission. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Shift Denied

This message displays when the transmission has not shifted to the selected gear as the current vehicle speed will result in an engine speed outside the suitable range. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *189*.

Grade Braking Active

This message displays when the grade braking feature has been activated while driving on downhill gradients. The message will only appear the first time the feature activates in an ignition cycle. See 'Grade Braking' under *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *187*.

Transmission Hot – Idle Engine

This message displays when immediate action by the driver is necessary to prevent transmission failure.

Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and idle the engine until the message turns off.

Service 4WD

This message displays when there is a problem with the four-wheel drive system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

4WD Shift in Progress

This message displays while the four-wheel drive system is shifting.

For 4WD Low Shift to Neutral

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift into Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested and the vehicle speed is correct, but the transmission is not in N (Neutral).

To Exit 4WD Low Shift To Neutral

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift out of Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested and the vehicle speed is correct, but the transmission is not in N (Neutral).

For 4WD Low Slow to 5 km/h

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift into Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested but the vehicle speed is too high.

To Exit 4WD Low Slow to 5 km/h

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift out of Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested but the vehicle speed is too high.

Vehicle In 4WD Low

This message displays if the vehicle is driven in Four-Wheel Drive Low for about 10 minutes above 72 km/h.

4WD OFF

This message displays when the four-wheel drive system is temporarily disabled due to overheating. The vehicle will run in two-wheel drive when this message is present. Once the four-wheel drive system cools down, the message turns off and the four-wheel drive system returns to normal operation.

Vehicle Reminder Messages

Ice Possible. Drive with Care

This message displays when icy conditions are possible.

Parking Assist Off

This message displays when the Parking Assist (PA) system has been turned off due to a fault. See *Parking Assist* ⇨ *203*.

Service Parking Assist

This message displays if there is a problem with the PA system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Vehicle Speed Messages

Selected Speed Limit Exceeded

This message displays when the vehicle speed is greater than the adjusted set speed.

Vehicle Personalisation

The behaviour of some vehicle functions can be personalised by changing settings in the Infotainment system. Also, some personal settings for different drivers may able to be memorised individually for each vehicle key. See *Memorised Settings* ⇨ *11*.

Note

- The following describes the functions in the **Vehicle** menu. For a description of other Settings menu items see *Settings* ⇨ *130* or *Settings* ⇨ *165*.
- Depending on vehicle model and options, some functions described below may not be available.
- Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

Press ⌂, select **SETTINGS** and then **Vehicle**.

The settings can be changed in the following corresponding submenus.

- Climate and Air Quality.
- Collision / Detection Systems.
- Comfort and Convenience.
- Lighting.
- Power Door Locks.
- Remote Lock, Unlock, Start.

Climate and Air Quality

- Auto Fan Speed.
  - Select the desired option from the list.
- Auto Rear Defog.
  - Select On or Off.

Collision / Detection Systems

- Rear Cross Traffic Alert.
  - Select On or Off.
- Side Blind Zone Alert.
  - Select On or Off.

Comfort and Convenience

- Chime Volume.
  - Press – or + to set the chime volume.
- Personalisation by Driver.
  - Select On or Off.
- Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear.
  - Select On or Off.

Lighting

- Vehicle Locator Lights.
  - Select On or Off.
- Exit Lighting.
  - Select the desired option from the list.

Power Door Locks

- Auto Door Lock.
  - Select On or Off.

Remote Lock, Unlock, Start

- Remote Unlock Light Feedback.
  - Select Off or Flash Lights.
- Remote Lock Feedback.
  - Select the desired option from the list.
- Remote Door Unlock.
  - Select All Doors or Driver Door.
- Relock Remote Unlocked Doors.
  - Select On or Off.
- Remote Window Operation.
  - Select On or Off.

Lighting

Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 82
Automatic Light Control 82
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 83
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 83
Headlamp Leveling Control 84
Hazard Warning Flashers 84
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 84
Front Fog Lamps 85
Reverse Lamps 85
Misted Light Covers 85

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 85
Load Compartment Lamps 86
Courtesy Lamps 86
Reading Lamps 87
Sun Visor Lamps 87

Lighting Features
Entry Lighting 87
Exit Lighting 88
Battery Power Protection 88

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls

Turn the switch.

⏻ **:** Activates or deactivates the automatic lamp control system. The switch returns to **AUTO**.

AUTO : Headlamps and exterior lamps are switched on and off automatically depending on external lighting conditions.

: Park lamps, number plate lamps and instrument panel lamps are illuminated.

: Headlamps on.

When the exterior lamps are on, illuminates in the instrument cluster. See *Lamps On Reminder* ⇨ *71*.

Automatic Light Control

When the exterior lamp control switch is set to **AUTO**, the system automatically turns the headlamps and tail lamps on, depending on the exterior illumination conditions.

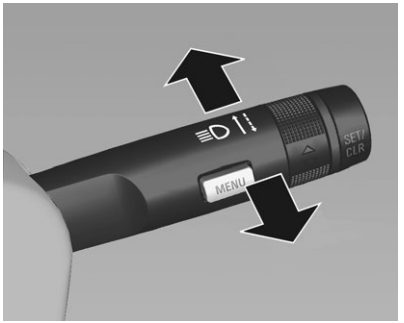
This function operates with a short delay depending upon the ambient lighting conditions.

If the windscreen wipers operate eight continuous cycles when it is dark outside, the exterior lamps illuminate automatically.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

⚠ Warning

Always switch the high beam headlamps to low beam when you approach oncoming or other vehicles ahead. High beam headlamps can temporarily dazzle other drivers, which could result in a collision.



To activate high beam:

- When the headlamps are on, push the turn signal lever away from you.

  The high-beam on light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

To return to low beam:

- Pull the lever towards you.

To flash the high beam lamps:

- Pull the turn signal lever towards you and release.

  The lamps remain on high beam for as long as the lever is pulled. When the lever is released, the headlamps return to their previous state, e.g. low beam if they were on, or off.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

DRL increase the visibility of the vehicle during daylight. The LEDs in the DRL can operate in two different intensities:

- Normal intensity for position (parking) lamps.
- High intensity for DRL function.

The DRL operate in high intensity in the following conditions:

- The ignition is in the ON/RUN position.
- The exterior lamp control is in the AUTO position.
- The engine is running and the shift lever is not in P.

Headlamp Leveling Control

To set the headlamp level according to vehicle load, turn the dial to the required position.

0 or 1 : One person in the driver´s seat, or both front seats occupied (2 passengers).

2 : Front seats and all seats furthest to the rear occupied (5 passengers), or all seats occupied (7 passengers).

3 : All seats occupied plus load compartment full with the permissible load on the rear axle, or one person in the driver's seat, plus load compartment full with the permissible load on the rear axle.

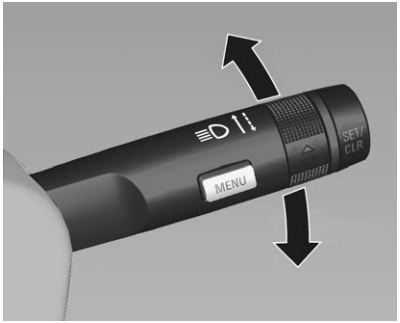
Hazard Warning Flashers

Operated with the ⚠ button.

Press again to turn the flashers off.

The hazard warning flashers will activate automatically if the airbags deploy.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Push the lever in the direction the steering wheel is turned.

To signal a lane change, push the lever part way in the direction of the turn. The turn signals will flash three times (six times when a trailer is connected).

To cancel a lane change function, push the lever in either direction.

A green arrow on the instrument panel flashes when the lamps are in operation.

Front Fog Lamps

The vehicle may have front fog lamps.

The front fog lamps provide extra illumination to the sides of the road and improve visibility in fog or snow.

To switch the front fog lamps on:

1. Rotate the lamp control to or .
2. Press .

   illuminates on the instrument panel.

Reverse Lamps

The reverse lamps illuminate when the ignition is on and reverse gear is engaged.

Misted Light Covers

Caution
Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

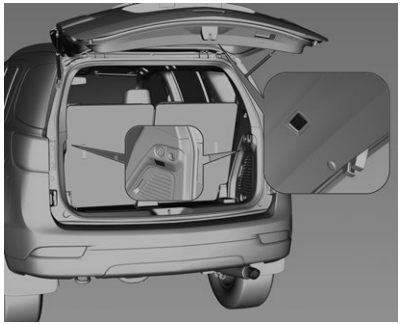
Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

To adjust the instrument lighting brightness:

1. Rotate .
2. Hold until the required brightness is reached.

Load Compartment Lamps

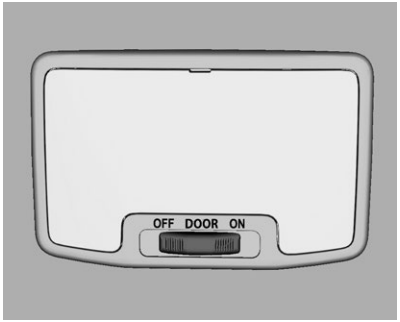


The lamps illuminate when a door or the tailgate is opened.

Courtesy Lamps

Press .

The courtesy lamp automatically turns on when a door is opened and turns off after the doors are closed.



Slide the switch:

OFF : Remains off.

DOOR : Automatically switches on when a door is opened and turns off after the doors are closed.

ON : Remains on.

Note

To prevent the battery from discharging, turn the lamp off when the engine is not running.

⚠ Warning

Do not leave the courtesy lamp on while driving in the dark.

Reading Lamps

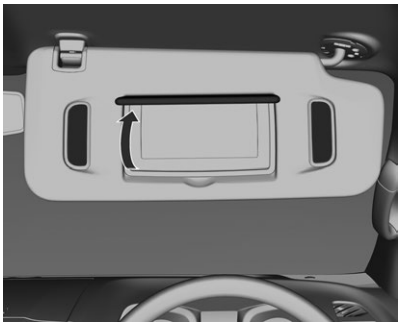
The reading lamps are located between the sun visors.

1. Press the light area to turn a lamp on.

   The passenger's or driver's front lamp illuminates.

2. Press again to turn the lamp off.

Sun Visor Lamps



Illuminates when the vanity mirror cover is opened, see *Sun Visors* ⇨ *22*.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

Entry lighting provides additional security when returning to the vehicle at night.

Press ⚿ on the RKE transmitter. The interior and exterior* lamps will illuminate for a short time.

*: with the exterior lamp control switch in AUTO.

The lighting turns off when the ignition is turned to the ACC position.

The settings for this function can be changed. See 'Vehicle Locator Lights' in *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *80*.

Additionally, some interior lamps and switches will illuminate when the driver's door is opened.

Exit Lighting

The interior lamps illuminate when the key is removed from the ignition switch if the courtesy lamp switch is not in the **OFF** position.

The headlamps illuminate the way for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

To operate:

1. Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Close the driver's door.

Note

The exterior lamp control switch must be in the AUTO position.

The default setting activates the exit lighting for 30 seconds after the driver's door is closed.

The activation time can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *80*.

Battery Power Protection

To prevent discharge of the battery when the ignition is off, some interior lamps are turned off automatically after some time.

If you turn off the ignition with the exterior lamps on, they will immediately turn off. If you turn the exterior lamps on when the ignition is off they will remain on.

Infotainment System

MyLink with Built-in Navigation

Introduction
Introduction 90
Overview 90
Steering Wheel Controls 92
Using the System 93

Radio
AM-FM Radio 94
Radio Reception 95
Radio Reception (DAB) 96
Fixed Mast Antenna 97

Audio Players
USB Port 97
Auxiliary Jack (If equipped) ... 100
Bluetooth Audio 100

Navigation
Using the Navigation System 101
Maps 106
Navigation Symbols 106
Destination 107
Settings 112
Global Positioning System (GPS) 113
Vehicle Positioning 114
Problems with Route Guidance 115
If the System Needs Service 115
Map Data Updates 115
Database Coverage Explanations 115

Voice Recognition
Voice Recognition 116

Phone
Bluetooth 122
Text Messaging 127
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 128
Using Voice Recognition 129

Settings
Settings 130

Trademarks and Licence Agreements
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 133

MyLink

Introduction
Infotainment 142
Theft-Deterrent Feature 143
Overview 143
Home Page 144
Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped) 145
Operation 145

Radio
AM-FM Radio 146
Radio Reception 147
Radio Reception (DAB) 147
Fixed Mast Antenna 149

Audio Players
USB Port 149
Auxiliary Devices 156

Phone
Bluetooth 156
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 161
Hands-Free Phone 162

Settings
Settings 165

Trademarks and Licence Agreements
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 168

Introduction

Two infotainment systems are available.

This section describes the infotainment system with built-in Navigation system. For the system without built-in Navigation, see *Infotainment* ⇨ *142*.

Note

Some functions of the Infotainment System may not be compatible with all phones or smartphones available in the market. Such features also depend on the connection with the internet and the service offered by phone companies and apps availability.

Overview

Read the following pages to become familiar with the infotainment system features.

⚠ Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

⚠ Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These functions may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

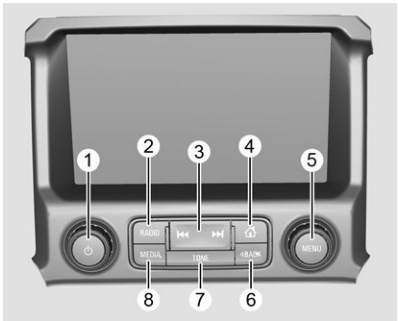
- Become familiar with the operation, faceplate buttons, and screen buttons.
- Set up the audio by pre-setting favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or by using a single voice command if equipped with Bluetooth phone capability.

Customer Care

Assistance is available to help with Bluetooth pairing, application downloading and installation, other mobile device interface, and operation support of the infotainment system. Contact your dealer for assistance.

Infotainment System

The infotainment system is controlled by using the touchscreen, the buttons below the touchscreen, steering wheel controls, and voice recognition.



1. ⏻ (Power/Volume)
   - Press to turn the audio on.
   - Press and hold to turn it off.
   - Press to mute the system. Press again to unmute.
   - Turn to increase or decrease the volume.
2. RADIO
   - Press to change the audio source between AM and FM.
3. ⏮ or ⏭ (Seek)
   - AM and FM: Press ⏮ or ⏭ to seek to the previous or next station with good reception.
   - AM and FM: Press and hold ⏮ or ⏭ to go to the desired station.
4. ⌂ (Home Page)
   - Press to go to the Home Page from any point in the system. See “Home Page”.
5. MENU
   - Press to access the menu for the current audio source.
   - Press to select the highlighted menu option.
   - Turn to scroll through a list.
   - Turn to manually select a station.
6. ◁ BACK
   - Press to return to the previous screen in a menu.
7. TONE
   - Press TONE in the AUDIO screen to open the Tone Settings menu.
8. MEDIA
   - Press to change the audio source between USB, AUX, and Bluetooth Audio, if equipped and if connected to the system.

Power (On/Off/Mute)

- Press ⏻ to turn the system on. Press again and hold to turn it off.
- Press ⏻ to mute the system. Press again to unmute the system.

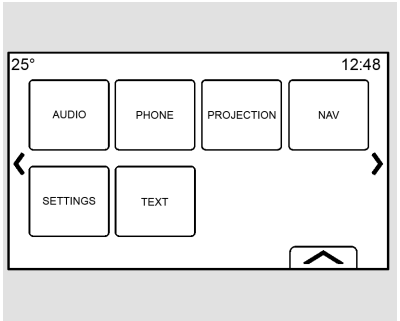
Volume

Turn ⏻ to increase or decrease the volume.

Note

When changing the audio source, a difference in volume may be experienced.

Home Page



The Home Page is where vehicle application icons are accessed. Some applications are disabled when the vehicle is moving.

The Home Page can be set up to have up to five pages with eight icons per page.

《 **(Previous) :** If available, touch to go to the previous Home Page.

》 **(Next) :** If available, touch to go to the next Home Page.

(Interaction Selector) : Touch to display the favourites list.

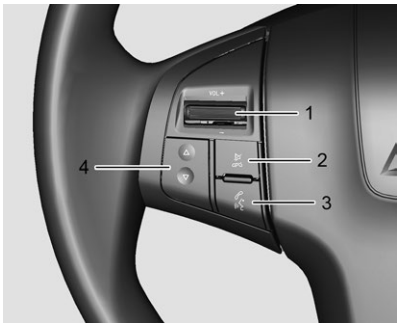
Touch and hold a location within the favourites area to begin the process of saving a favourite application.

Touch the application icon to store as a favourite. The name of the application will be shown in favourites.

Managing Home Page Icons

1. Touch and hold any of the Home Page icons to enter edit mode.
2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.
4. To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the screen towards the desired page.
5. Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.
6. Press ⌂ to exit edit mode.

Steering Wheel Controls



1. **Volume** button
   - Move the button upward to VOL + button to increase the volume.

- Move the button downward to - button to decrease the volume.

2. button
   - Press this button to decline an incoming call or end a current call.
   - Press this button to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.
3. button
   - When there is no connected Bluetooth device, the Infotainment system executes the Bluetooth device connection.
   - When there is a connected Bluetooth device, press the button to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

     If the customer's connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold the button to activate the phone's SR (Speech recognition) mode.
   - If an iPhone is connected, press and hold to enter the Siri function.
4. (seek)
   - When are pressed up/down.

     In Radio modes, changes broadcast frequencies saved in favourite.

     In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, changes the file.
   - When are pressed and held.

     In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, rewind or fast forward the file.

Using the System

Touchscreen Buttons

Touchscreen buttons are displayed on the screen when available. When a function is unavailable, the button may grey out. When a function is selected, the button may highlight.

Home Page Features

Touch the icons on the Home Page screen to launch an application.

Audio

Touch the AUDIO icon to display the active audio source page. Available sources are AM, FM, DAB, My Media, USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

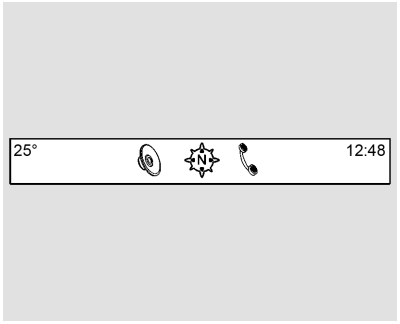
Phone

Touch the PHONE icon to display the Phone main page. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *122*.

Settings

Touch the SETTINGS icon to display the Settings menu. See *Settings* ⇨ *130*.

Applications Tray



The applications tray is at the top-centre of the screen. The applications tray can have three to five applications.

To add an application from the Home Page to the applications tray:

1. Touch and hold any icon on the Home Page to enter edit mode.
2. Drag the icon to the applications tray.

To remove an item from the applications tray, drag the icon from the applications tray back to the Home Page.

Press ⌂ to exit edit mode.

Adding or removing applications from the applications tray will not remove them from the Home Page.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces.

Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents.

Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

While on the Audio main page, the available sources are: AM, FM, DAB, My Media, USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

- Touch the Audio screen button on the Home Page or Radio button below the touchscreen to scroll through AM, FM orDAB.
- Touch the Media screen button on the Home Page or Media button below the touchscreen to scroll through My Media USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

Infotainment System Settings

Touch the Audio screen button to access broadcast sources.

Touch the MENU screen button to display the following menus:

Tone Settings:

- Bass, Midrange, Treble : Touch + or − to adjust.

- **Balance**: Touch < or > for more sound from the left or right speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the left and right speakers.
- **Fade**: Touch ∧ or ∨ for more sound from the front or rear speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the front and rear speakers.

Finding a Station

Seeking a Station

Press ⏮ or ⏭ on the faceplate to search for the previous or next station with good reception.

Direct Tune

Touch the TUNE screen button to switch to Direct Tune for manually searching for a station.

If not equipped with Direct Tune, touch the SEEK screen button to switch to TUNE. Touch again to change back. Turn the MENU knob to manually search for a station.

Press ◁ BACK on the faceplate to return to the Home Page or touch < to return for the previous page.

Storing Radio Station Presets

Favorites are stored in the area at the bottom of the screen.

Up to 60 preset stations can be stored under the following:

AM or FM, Radio Stations : Touch and hold a favorite screen button to save the current station as a favorite. Touch a favorite screen button in the favorite area to recall a favorite station.

Mixed-Audio Favorites

Favorites that can be stored include radio stations, media favorites, contacts, destinations, navigation, or applications.

To scroll through the favorites:

- Drag up on the top border of the favorites bar to view the favorites. To close the favorites, drag them down.
- Slide a finger to the right or left to scroll through each page of favorites.

Tone Settings : Touch and hold a favorite screen button in the favorite area to save the current tone settings as a favorite in the tone settings screen. Drag up on the reveal button at the bottom to bring up favorites. Touch a favorite screen button in the favorite area to recall a favorite tone setting.

The number of favorites displayed is automatically adjusted by default, but can be manually adjusted in the Settings menu under Radio and then Number of Favourites Shown.

Radio Reception

Unplug electronic devices from the accessory power outlets if there is interference or static in the radio.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce

interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

Radio Reception (DAB)

Digital audio broadcasting

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) is an innovative and universal broadcasting system.

Note
Not all of the following features may be supported.

Advantages of DAB

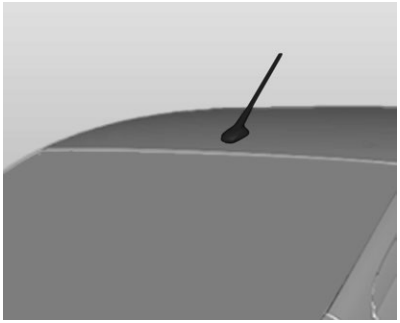
- DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency
- With DAB, several radio programmes (services) can be broadcast on a single frequency (ensemble).
- Besides high-quality digital audio services, DAB is also able to transmit programme-associated data.
- As long as a given DAB receiver can pick up the signal sent out by a broadcasting station (even if the signal is very weak), sound reproduction is ensured.
- There is no fading (weakening of the sound that is typical of AM or FM reception). The DAB signal is reproduced at a constant volume.

  If the DAB signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver, reception is interrupted completely.
- Interference caused by stations that are on nearby frequencies (a phenomenon that is typical of AM and FM reception) does not occur with DAB.
- If the DAB signal is reflected by natural obstacles or buildings, the reception quality of DAB is improved, whereas AM or FM reception is considerably impaired in such cases.

DAB settings

To configure the DAB settings options, activate the radio function and then select the DAB waveband. Select MENU in the interaction selector bar to display the DAB menu.

Fixed Mast Antenna



To remove the roof antenna, rotate it anticlockwise. To install the roof antenna, rotate it clockwise.

Caution
To avoid damaging the antenna or the roof panel, be sure to remove the antenna before entering the automatic car wash or a place with a low ceiling.

Install the antenna firmly.

Whenever using the roof rack system, check if the antenna is not obstructing the area that is being used by the roof rack system or the cargo.

Audio Players

USB Port

The vehicle may have a USB port on the main storage under the armrest.

Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage device can be connected to the USB port.

Gracenote® (If equipped)

When plugging in a USB device, Gracenote service builds voice tags for music. Voice tags allow artists, albums with hard to pronounce names, and nicknames to be used to play music through voice recognition.

While indexing, infotainment features are available.

My Media Library

Allows access to content from all indexed media sources. Touch the MEDIA screen button to scroll

through the options until My Media is selected. Use the screen buttons to scroll through the content.

USB MP3 Player and USB Drives

- The USB MP3 players and USB drives connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).
- Hard disk drives are not supported.
- The following restrictions apply for the data stored on a USB MP3 player or USB device:
  - Maximum folder structure level: 11 levels.
  - Applicable audio extensions are mp3, wma, aac, m4a, and aif.
  - WMA and Apple lossless files are not supported.
  - Supported file systems are FAT32 and NTFS.

To play a USB device, do one of the following:

- Connect the USB.
- Press MEDIA until the connected device is shown.

Use the following when playing an active USB source:

▶ **(Play) :** Press to play the current media source.

⏸ **(Pause) :** Press to pause play of the current media source.

⏮ **(Previous/Reverse):**

- Press to return to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than two seconds, the previous track plays. If playing longer than 2–5 seconds, depending on the device, the current track restarts.
- Press and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

⏭ **(Next/Forward):**

- Press to proceed to the next track.
- Press and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

USB Menu

Touch Menu to display the USB menu. The following may be available:

Shuffle: Touch to play the tracks randomly. Touch again to stop shuffle.

Tone: Touch + or − to adjust the tone settings. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *94*.

USB Browse Menu

Touch anywhere between the top and bottom menus or touch the BROWSE button to view the BROWSE menu. The following options are displayed along the bottom of the screen:

Playlists:

1. Touch to view the playlists stored on the USB.
2. Select a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.

3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Artists:

1. Touch to view the list of artists stored on the USB.
2. Select an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, touch ▷ to play All Songs or touch the artist name and then select a song from the list.

Albums:

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Select the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Songs:

1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.
2. To begin playback, select a song from the list.

Genres:

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.
2. Select a genre to view a list of all content of that genre.
3. Select artist to view a list of albums. Select an album to view a list of songs.
4. Select a song to start playback.

Podcasts, Composers, Audiobooks, Videos, and Folder View are shown when More is selected from the bottom of the screen.

Podcasts:

1. Touch to view the podcasts on the USB.
2. Select a podcast.
3. Select an episode to start playback.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the USB.
2. Select Composers to view a list of albums by that composer.
3. Select an album to view a list of songs.
4. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Audiobooks:

1. Touch to view the audiobooks stored on the device.
2. Select the audiobook from the list. Select a chapter to begin playback.

Folder View (If Equipped):

1. Touch to view the directories on the USB.
2. Select a folder to view a list of all files.
3. Select a file from the list to begin playback.

File System and Naming

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if present. The radio displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Loss of Audio

If a phone currently paired over Bluetooth is plugged in with a USB cable, the system will automatically mute the Bluetooth audio. Playback can be resumed by changing the audio source from Bluetooth to USB cable.

Source USB from the Audio MEDIA screen button to resume playback.

Auxiliary Jack (If equipped)

An auxiliary input jack is provided in the centre console under the armrest. Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- Audio music player

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack. Set up an auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park).

Connect a 3.5 mm (1/8 in) cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, the system can play audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, touch the MEDIA screen button to scroll through audio source screens, until AUX Input source screen displays.

Playing from the AUX Port

An auxiliary device is played through the audio system and controlled through the device itself.

AUX Menu

Touch the MEDIA screen button to display the AUX Input menu and then the following options may display:

Tone Settings : Select to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance, Fade, and EQ (Equaliser). See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *94*.

Auto Volume : (If Equipped): This feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *94*.

Bluetooth Audio

If equipped, music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *122* for help pairing a device.

The music can be controlled by either the infotainment controls or the controls on the device.

Music can be launched by pressing the MEDIA faceplate button or touching the MEDIA screen button on the AUDIO Home Page.

To play music via Bluetooth:

1. Power on the device, and pair to connect the device.
2. Once paired, go into the audio application from the Home Page or through the applications tray. Select MEDIA until Bluetooth displays.

Bluetooth Audio Menu

Touch the MENU screen button to display the Bluetooth Audio menu. The following may be available:

Tone: Touch + or − to adjust the tone settings. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *94*.

Touch ❮ to go back to the previous menu.

Manage Bluetooth Devices: Touch to go to the Bluetooth page to add or delete devices.

When using the Bluetooth audio source, the radio may not be able to launch specific applications on your device. Use the device to start audio playback when it is safe to do so.

All devices launch audio differently. When selecting Bluetooth audio as a source, the radio may show as paused on the screen. Press play on the device or press ▶ to begin playback.

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

Touch the NAV button on the Home Page or the Nav icon in the applications tray to access the navigation application.

Touch MENU from the map view or MENU button on the faceplate to access the Navigation Menu. Features displayed in the Navigation Menu can be selected to adjust navigation preferences.

It is advised to set up preferences before setting a destination. To set a destination, see *Destination* ⇨ *107*.

The buttons on the infotainment screen display will time out when not interacting. Tap anywhere on the screen to reveal the controls, then select the desired control.

Additional navigation features are:

- Cancel/Resume Route
- Navigation Voice Preferences
- Current Location
- Map View
- Routing Preferences
- Display "Points of Interest" Icons
- Personal Data

Cancel/Resume Route

- While under route guidance, this screen button displays Cancel Route. Touch Cancel Route to cancel route guidance. No further prompts will be given. The list item then changes to Resume to.
- Touch the Resume to screen button to resume route guidance to the last entered destination. The last location that the system has provided guidance to can be resumed by touching on this list item.
- If the route includes waypoints, the entire route can be suspended using the Cancel Guidance list item. When Resume Guidance is touched, all waypoints are resumed for guidance.

Navigation Voice Preferences

Touch the Navigation Voice Preferences list item to adjust the voice preferences.

The following options can be adjusted:

- Voice Prompts ON-OFF
- Voice Volume
- Prompts During Phone Calls ON-OFF

Voice Prompts

Touch the Voice Prompts list item to toggle voice prompts ON and OFF.

Voice Volume

Adjust the loudness of the audio feedback by touching the − or + button. If a manoeuver prompt is being played, and the main volume is adjusted, the prompt volume will update and be saved.

Prompts During Phone Calls

When enabled, the system plays a shorter prompt while on a phone call. This setting can be configured as to whether a prompt would be heard during a phone conversation.

When this setting is OFF, only the short alert tone is played when approaching the manoeuver.

Current Location

Touch the Current Location list item to display a Current Location list.

The following information is displayed on the Current Location list:

- Nearest Address
- Lat/Long
- Nearest Hospital
- Nearest Police
- Nearest Fuel
- Nearest Service

Touch on any of the options to display the destination details view for the selected location to begin guidance.

Touch the Nearest Address button and then the Save screen button to store the current location to the Address Book.

Display Points of Interest Icons

Places of Interest (POI) icons can be displayed on the map using this view.

- The POI icons can be turned ON and OFF. Touch the check box next to the POI icon to display the icon.
- Touch Clear All to reset the icons that are displayed on the map.
- A subcategory can be selected instead of the entire category. Touch the list item rather than the check box. The subcategories will display. Select any of those categories to navigate down the hierarchy.
- When a higher-level category has some of its subcategories selected, the checkmark next to it is greyed out. This indicates that only some of the categories

below are shown. Touch the greyed-out checkmark to turn all of the icons for that category on or off.

Map View

Touch to select the desired map view. A checkmark appears to indicate a view has been selected.

3D View

The 3D View is a Heading Up view but it includes perspective. Map items will appear larger as the vehicle comes closer.

Heading Up View

The Heading Up View keeps the vehicle's current heading at the top of the view. The vehicle icon always faces the top of the view as the map rotates.

North Up View

The North Up View keeps north at the top of the view. The vehicle icon is placed in the centre of the view and rotates to indicate the heading for the vehicle.

Audio Information On/Off

Touch to turn the audio information view on or off from the main map view.

The audio status screen contains the following elements:

- Station Frequency
- Artist Information
- Song Information
- ▶ / ❚❚ or ⏮ / ⏭ Station and Channel Controls

Touch the ⏮ / ⏭ Station controls to go to the next or previous strong signal station or digital channel.

When the audio status pane displays Artist and Song Information, touch the ⏮ / ⏭ controls to go to the next or previous track based on the current media mode.

Day/Night Mode

Touch to access the Day/Night Mode menu.

The options are:

- Day Mode: Brightens the map background.
- Night Mode: Darkens the map background.
- Automatic: Adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.

Routing Preferences

Touch the Routing Preferences list item to access the Routing Preferences menu. Options on how the routes are created for route guidance are listed on this menu.

Route Style

Touch this list item to change the route type preferences.

The options are:

- Fast (default)
- Eco Friendly (if equipped)
- Short
- Edit Eco Profile

The Edit Eco Profile can be used to configure two parameters for the Eco Friendly route. These parameters are roof load and trailer. For each parameter, the options are None, Small, Medium, and Large. Press to scroll through the list. The default for both is None.

These preferences are used for all routes generated.

Route segment preferences are other options showing on the Routing Preferences menu.

This includes:

- Use Toll Roads ON-OFF
- Use Motorways ON-OFF
- Use Carpool Lanes ON-OFF
- Use Ferries ON-OFF
- Use Tunnels ON-OFF
- Use Time Restricted Roads ON-OFF

Personal Data

Data that the system has saved during the course of using the navigation system can be managed through:

- Contacts
- Recent Destinations
- My POIs (if equipped)
- Upload Saved Locations
- Delete Autocomplete

Contacts

1. Touch Edit Contacts to display the Contacts to edit.
2. Touch Delete All Entries to delete the entire list of contacts or touch Edit Contacts List to delete one or more itens. A pop-up displays to confirm.

Recent Destinations

- Touch Delete Individual Destinations to display a recent destinations list. Select the individual entry to delete.
- Touch Delete All Destinations to delete the entire recent destination list. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.

My POIs

- Touch My POIs to display a menu of other options.
- Select Delete Individual Categories. A My POIs category list displays.
- Select the individual entry to delete.
- Touch Delete All My POIs to delete the entire list of categories. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.
- To exit out of a list, touch the Exit screen button in the top right corner of the map to return to the main map view.

Upload Saved Locations: Touch to upload any saved locations such as downloaded POIs and all entries in the vehicle address book to the USB device.

- Touch Upload Saved Locations to save the Vehicle Contacts list and any My POIs that have been saved to the vehicle.
- Once saved locations have been uploaded to a USB, they can be transferred to a different vehicle or restored to the current address book.

Delete Autocomplete

- Touch Delete Autocomplete to delete all keyboard autocomplete history. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.

Map Adjustments

ZOOM −/+ can be used to adjust the scale of view on the map. When the end of the zoom level is reached, ZOOM −/+ will grey out.

The zoom scales can be configured for English or metric units. To change from English to metric, see “Instrument Cluster” in the owner manual.

Scroll Features

- To scroll within the map, touch anywhere on the map screen.
- Nudge or slide a finger on the map; the map moves in the direction of the finger.
- Fling a finger on the map; the map will start scrolling in a short continuous scroll.
- Touch a finger on the location on the map; the map recentres to the location that was touched on.
- Touch a finger twice on a location on the map; the map zooms in one level to the location that was touched twice on.
- When the map is recentred away from being locked to the vehicle position, the crosshairs will show in the centre of the map. As the map continues to be recentred, the crosshairs will remain on the screen. When the crosshairs are shown on the screen, a callout with more information displays. If the map is moved from the current location, the crosshairs will disappear along with the callout.
- Touch a finger on the callout next to the crosshairs and the destination details view displays. From this view, route guidance can be received or saved to the vehicle's contact list.
- When the map is recentred, the straight-line distance from the vehicle to the selected point is displayed in the callout. In addition, a heading direction in the form of an arrow is displayed to indicate the direction. The arrow is shown in relation to the current vehicle heading.
- Touch a finger on a POI icon shown on the map; the name of the POI is shown in the address callout, along with the city name and state. If the callout is selected, the destination details view for the POI is shown.

- After panning the map away from the vehicle, touch RESET to return the map back to the current position.
- Touch the OVERVIEW button to quickly get a view of the entire route. The route OVERVIEW button takes the place of the RESET button while under route guidance. Touch the RESET button to return the map to the current position.

Maps

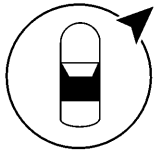
The map database is stored in the internal flash memory that is used in the navigation system.

Detailed Areas

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for detailed areas. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include Places of Interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, petrol stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments. The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections that are completed after production. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas.

Navigation Symbols

Following are the most common symbols that appear on a map screen.



or

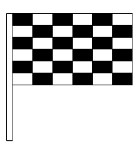
The vehicle symbol indicates the current position and heading direction of the vehicle on the map. When under route guidance, a circle with an arrow is added to the vehicle symbol which indicates the direction to the destination.

Vehicle Address Callout

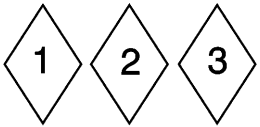
Tap on the vehicle icon, to have the current address of the vehicle overlaid on the map next to the vehicle icon in a callout. Another tap hides the information.

Any address information about the vehicle's current location will be shown, including the street, city, and state names.

Tap on this callout to save the current address to the vehicle address book.



The destination symbol marks the final destination after a route has been planned.



The waypoint symbol marks one or more set waypoints.

A waypoint is a stopover destination point added to the planned route.

The estimated time to the destination displays. Touch the Arrival button to toggle to duration and to the distance of the destination.

This symbol indicates the recommended manoeuver that should be performed. Touch it to display the turn list or waypoint list.

The No GPS symbol appears when there is no Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite signal. When the GPS is gone, the vehicle position on the map may not be accurate.

Autozoom

As a manoeuver is being approached, the map automatically zooms in to give greater detail.

If lane guidance is available for the manoeuver, this is also shown.

When the system begins to autozoom, it zooms in to its minimum level. After the manoeuver is performed, the system slowly zooms back out.

Destination

If route guidance is not active, touch the NAV screen button on the Home Page to access the map view. Touch the Destination icon from the map view to enter a destination. Available methods of entering a destination are Address, Recent Destinations, Contacts, Crossroads and POIs. Several options can be

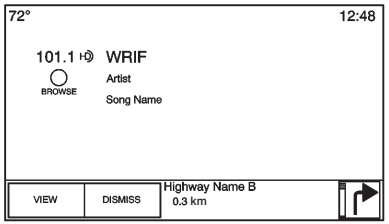
selected to plan a route. Some destination items may be greyed out if no destination was previously entered or saved.

Touch the DESTINATION button to go to the destination entry views.

Available Methods of Search

- Address
- Crossroads
- POIs
- Recent Destinations
- Contacts

Navigation Next Turn Manoeuver Alert



The navigation system has an alert feature. The navigation system may need to get the attention of the driver.

If not in the navigation application when a near manoeuver prompt is given, it is shown as an alert. The alert contains the turn indicator and button to display the main navigation view, or dismiss the alert.

The alert also contains the name of the street to turn on and a countdown bar.

Alpha-Numeric Keyboard

The keyboard is used in multiple locations throughout the system and can be used with many features. The navigation system uses the keyboard's alpha-numeric keyboard.

The keyboard can also be modified to include characters appropriate for the region configured in the vehicle settings.

✓ **GO :** Touch to search for the destination details of an address or place of interest entered in the text field. Once the GO screen button is pressed, the activity indicator displays in the list of possible matches.

▽ **(Dropdown Arrow) :** Touch to display a list of matches.

When there are multiple matches, a dropdown arrow is shown after the autocomplete text. This dropdown displays an entire list of matches. Touch the appropriate match without having to enter more text.

✕ **(Delete) :** Touch to delete the last typed character. Press and hold this screen button to clear the entire text field. If the entire text field has been deleted, this screen button becomes an Undo button. Touching Undo will restore the deleted text.

Exit : Touch to return to the previous Map view.

Sym : Touch to show the symbol keyboard.

Space : Touch to enter a space between characters or the words of a name.

(Up Arrow) : Touch to display the Interaction Selector.

Special Characters

As the characters are typed on the keyboard, a pop-up of the letter touched displays above the key that was touched.

Continue to touch and hold, and any additional special characters associated with that letter are displayed around the current letter. To select one of the special characters, slide a finger left or right to select the special character.

Special Character List

The following characters have special characters beneath them:

E - É È Ê Ë Ę É Ē
Y - Ÿ
U - Ū Ú Ù Ü Û
I - Ī Į Í Ì Ï Î
O - Õ Ø Œ Õ Ó Ò Ö Ô
A - À Á Â Ä Æ Ã Å Ā
S - ß(for lowercase s) Ś Š
Ł - Ł
Z - Ź Ž Ż
C - Ç Ć Č
N - Ñ Ń
. - …

More Characters:
0 - °
! - ¡
$ - ¥ £ ¢
& - §
“ - «»
? - ¿
(- [{
) -] }
.com - .net .org

Saved Destinations

Select a saved destination from the Contacts or Recent Destinations.

Contacts

Select the CONTACTS button to view the vehicle's contact list or a connected Bluetooth device. If a particular contact has a single address associated with it, that contact has a Quick Route list item function button next to it. Contacts without this Quick Route button either have multiple addresses or no address at all. Touch the Quick Route button to go to the Destination Details view.

Touch on an address, either from the Quick Route on the contact list or a specific address from the contact detail list, to go to the destination view showing that address on the map.

Trips from Contacts can be saved and recalled. The order is based on when the trip was last used. When the trips are saved, they are given a default title of the final destination name. If there are no saved trips, this list item is hidden.

Favourite Destinations

- Destinations can be saved as Favourites for recall later. Depending on the favourite, when an address or POI favourite is recalled, the Destination Details View is shown.
- When a favourite address is being routed to, it is shown active. Touch on the active favourite to suspend that route.
- Save locations as Favourites for recall later in the Destination Details View.
- Save trips from the Address Book.

Storing Favourites from the Contact Details List

A contact name or any of the contact's information such as phone number, e-mail address, or address from Contact Details can be stored as a Favourite.

- Touch and drag up on the row of Interaction Selector buttons to reveal the Favourite buttons.

- Touch and hold on the favourite location while viewing a contact on the Contact Details List. The contact name and all contact information can be stored.
- Touch to save as a favourite. The favourite label will be the name of the contact.
- Touch on the Favourite to display the destination view.

Storing Favourites from Map

Favourite locations can be stored from the Map View.

If not under route guidance, the current vehicle location will be saved as a Favourite. If under route guidance, the final destination will be saved.

Touch and drag up on the row of Interaction Selector buttons to reveal the Favourite buttons. Touch and hold on the favourite location from the Map View to save it.

Route Guidance

- Touch GO to go to the main navigation view and to start route guidance.
- If the system has an active route, a pop-up will display, "What would you like to do with this destination?" The options are: Add As Waypoint, Set New Destination, or Cancel.
- If a waypoint is added, it is placed in the location that leads to the most efficient route.
- There is a maximum number of waypoints that can be added to the system. When the maximum number of waypoints has been reached, a pop-up displays indicating that a waypoint must first be deleted before a new one can be added. The system will hold this waypoint into a Pending Waypoints list and will automatically be added to the route once a position is available, either by arriving at a waypoint, or by deleting one.
- To save a location, tap on the ▲ to display the Favourite buttons. Touch and hold on a favourite location to save the shown location as a Favourite.

Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) and Distance

- When under route guidance, the system shows the ETA or travel time, or the driving distance.
- The ETA and travel time are calculated using any available traffic information.
- If in a waypoint trip, the ETA, travel time, and driving distance are all shown relative to the final destination.
- The final ETA is shown taking into consideration any time zone crossings that the route has travelled through.
- Touch the ETA information area to switch between the estimated arrival time, total driving time resulting, and driving distance.

Turn List

Touch on the next turn indicator shown on the map to display the turn list or waypoint list. The Interaction Selector is minimised automatically. Touch ▲ to reveal the following options:

Destination

Touch the DESTINATION screen button to add a waypoint or change the destination while viewing the turn list. When the DESTINATION screen button is touched, the display shows the Destination screens.

End Guidance

Touch the End screen button to suspend the current route in the turn list. When the End screen button is touched, the turn list is exited, and the display returns to the main map view.

Avoid Areas

Touch the Avoid Areas screen button to select the highway name that is to be avoided. The system shows a pop-up asking how many miles or if the entire road should be avoided.

Turn List

- When under a waypoint trip, touch on the TURN LIST Interaction Selector button to show the turn list. When entering a turn list, the next manoeuver instruction is spoken.
- The turn list title is the name or address of the destination. Touch on the information button next to the name of the destination to display the destination information.
- The turn list is sorted in order with the next manoeuver at the top of the list and the subsequent manoeuvers listed below it. The next manoeuver is always highlighted upon entry into the Turn List to quickly show what the next manoeuver is.
- Each manoeuver indicates the distance between it and the previous manoeuver or the vehicle's current location. The next manoeuver at the top will count down until the manoeuver is reached, and then the next manoeuver will begin to count down.
- Each manoeuver has an estimated time of arrival based on the current driving conditions.

Saved Trips

Waypoint trips can be saved for later recall. Touch the + add button in the waypoints list to save the trip to the Saved Trips list in the vehicle's contacts list. When trips are saved, they are given a default title of the final destination. Saved trips can be edited by selecting the Edit list item button to access the edit screen for the saved entry. The only field that can be edited is the name field. Touch on the name field to access the keyboard view. Type the name change. This change is automatically saved when executed by the keyboard.

The saved trip can also be deleted from the edit mode. Touch the delete button and a delete confirmation pop-up will display.

Waypoints

- When under a waypoint trip, touch on the next turn indicator to bring up the waypoint list. The last waypoint view is shown, which could be Waypoints, Turn List, or Edit.
- The waypoint list is sorted in order with the next waypoint at the top of the list. Each waypoint is indicated with a numbered icon, starting with the next waypoint.
- To indicate what segment of the route is for the next waypoint, and what is for the remainder of the route, they appear in different colors.

Optimised Route

- Touch the OPTIMISE screen button to optimise the current waypoint trip.
- The optimisation is done according to how the preferences are set for new routes, e.g., fastest route, shortest distance, or eco friendly.
- While the system is optimising the route, the waypoint trip has the Activity Indicator displayed over top of it. If the system is calculating the ETA and travel distance for a waypoint, the Activity Indicator is displayed in the list header.
- When either a waypoint trip is first created, or additional waypoints are added to an existing waypoint trip, they are added in the location that would lead to an optimised route.
- If a destination is already planned and a waypoint is added, it is either added before or after the current destination, whichever leads to the most optimal route.
- If under an existing waypoint trip consisting of two or more destinations, any additional waypoints are added in the location that would lead to the most optimal route.

Edit Route

- Touch the EDIT screen button to modify the order or remove a waypoint from the route. Press the delete screen button to remove a waypoint from the route.
- A pop-up displays asking for confirmation of the waypoint deletion.

Settings

Touch Settings on the Home Page to adjust features and preferences, such as Time and Date, Language, Valet Mode, or Radio. For setting options, see *Settings* ⇨ *130*.

A few of the setting options change the way the navigation system displays or reacts while in use.

1. Touch the Settings screen button on the Home Page.

2. Touch the scroll bar until the desired option displays. Select the desired settings to change.

Voice

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio and phone applications. See *Voice Recognition* ⇨ *116*.

Touch the voice screen button to display the Voice menu.

Confidence Threshold : Touch to change the confidence threshold to Confirm More or Confirm Less.

Prompt Length : Touch to change the prompt length to Short or Long.

Audio Feedback Speed : Touch to change the audio feedback speed to Slow, Medium, or Fast.

Display “What can I say?” Tips : Touch to change the display tips to ON or OFF.

Display

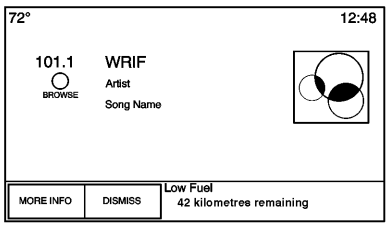
Mode : Touch Mode to change the screen background. This setting controls map colors.

- The Auto setting adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.
- The Day setting brightens the map background.
- The Night setting darkens the map background.

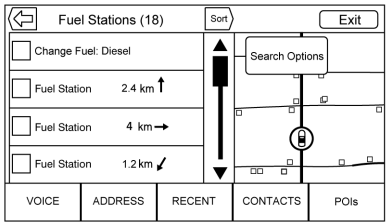
Calibrate Touchscreen : Touch to display the Touchscreen Calibration Screen.

Turn Display Off : Touch to turn the Display option off.

Low Fuel Alert



If the vehicle reaches a low fuel level, the system displays an alert about the low fuel condition. Touch the MORE INFO screen button to view nearby fuel stations, and start guidance if desired.



If the remaining driving distance is available from the system, this is included in the alert.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances

can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears on the map screen. See *Navigation Symbols* ⇨ *106*.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ *115* and *If the System Needs Service* ⇨ *115*.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel, or snow.
- The vehicle is travelling on winding roads or long straight roads.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes directions more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage, or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Tyre chains have been installed.
- The tyres are replaced or worn.
- The tyre pressure for the tyres is incorrect.
- This is the first navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery is disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.
- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.
- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps* ⇨ *106*.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstructions.

If the System Needs Service

If the navigation system needs service and the steps listed here have been followed but there are still problems, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ *115*.

Map Data Updates

The map data in the vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when the vehicle was produced. The map data can be updated, provided that the map information has changed.

For questions about the operation of the navigation system or the update process, contact your dealership.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others. If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates* ⇨ *115*.

Voice Recognition

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio and phone applications. This feature can be started by pressing either the button on the steering wheel or touching on the touchscreen display.

However, not all features within these areas are supported by voice commands. Generally, only complex tasks that require multiple manual interactions to complete are supported by voice commands.

For example, tasks that take more than one or two button presses such as selecting a song or artist to play from a media device would be supported by voice commands. Other tasks, like adjusting the volume or seeking up or down are audio features that are easily performed by pressing one or two buttons, and are not supported by voice commands.

Voice recognition can be used just when the ignition is on.

Using Voice Recognition

Voice recognition becomes available once the system has been initialised. This begins when the ignition is turned on. Initialisation may take a few moments.

1. Press on the steering wheel control to activate voice recognition, or touch on the infotainment touchscreen on the instrument panel.
2. The audio system mutes and the system plays a prompt followed by a beep.
3. Wait until after the beep completes, then clearly speak one of the commands described in this section.

   Press to interrupt any voice recognition system prompt. For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, press again and the beep should happen right away.

There are two voice prompt modes supported:

- Long verbal prompts: The longer prompts provide more information regarding the supported actions.
- Short prompts: The short prompts provide simple instructions about what can be stated.

If a command is not spoken, the voice recognition system says a help prompt.

Prompts and Screen Displays

While a voice recognition session is active, there will be corresponding buttons on screens displayed. Manual interaction in the voice recognition session is permitted. Interaction during a voice session may be completed entirely using voice commands, or some selections may expedite a session. If a selection is made using a manual control, the dialogue will progress in the same way as if the selection was made through a voice command. Once the system is able

to complete the task, or the session is terminated, the voice recognition dialogue stops.

An example of this type of manual intervention is touching on an entry of a displayed number list instead of speaking the number associated with the entry desired.

Cancelling Voice Recognition

- Touch the Home screen button. Pressing this button will terminate a voice recognition session which was initiated by pressing the button on the radio touchscreen.
- Touch or say “Cancel” or “Exit” to terminate the voice recognition session and display the screen from which voice recognition was initiated.
- Press ↩ on the steering wheel controls to terminate the voice session and display the screen from which voice recognition was initiated.

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

Voice recognition can understand commands that are either naturally stated in sentence form, or direct commands that state the application and the task.

Most languages do not support natural language commands in sentence form. For those languages, use direct commands like the examples shown on the display.

For best results:

- Listen for the prompt and wait for the beep before saying a command or reply.
- Say “Help” or look at the screen display for example commands.
- A voice recognition system prompt can be interrupted while it is playing by pressing .

  For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, to speak the command without waiting for the prompt to complete, press .
- Speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow. Use direct commands without a lot of extra words.
- Usually Phone and Audio commands can be spoken in a single command.

  For example say, “Call Dave Smith at work,” “Play” followed by the artist or song name, or “Tune” followed by the radio station number.
- Navigation destinations are too complex for a single command. First, say a command that explains the type of destination needed, such as I want directions to an “Address,” “Navigate to an intersection,” “I need to find a Place of Interest or POI,” or “Directions to a Contact.” The system responds by requesting more details. After

saying “Place of Interest,” only major chains are available by name. Chains are businesses with at least 20 locations. For other POIs, say the name of a category like “Restaurants,” “Shopping Malls,” or “Hospitals.”

There is no need to memorise specific command words. Direct commands might be more clearly understood by the system. An example of a direct command would be “Call 555-1212.” Examples of these direct commands are displayed on most of the screens while a voice session is active. If “Phone” or “Phone Commands,” is stated, the system understands that a phone call is requested and will respond with questions until enough details are gathered.

If the phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example “Call Dave Smith at work.”

Using Voice Recognition for List Options

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt will ask to confirm or select an option from that list. A selection can be made by manually selecting the item, or by speaking the line number for the item to select.

When a screen contains a list, there may be options that are available but not displayed. The list on a voice recognition screen functions the same as a list on other screens. Scrolling or flinging can be used to help display other entries from the list.

Manually scrolling or paging the list on a screen during a voice recognition session suspends the current voice recognition event and plays the prompt “Make your selection from the list using the manual controls or press the Back button to try again.”

If manual selection takes more than 15 seconds, the session terminates and prompts that it has timed out. The screen returns back to the screen where voice recognition was initiated.

The Back Command

Say “Back” or press the BACK button to go to the previous screen.

If in voice recognition, and “Back” is stated all the way through to the initial screen, then “Back” is stated one more time, the voice recognition session will cancel.

Help

Say “Help” on any voice recognition screen and the help prompt for the screen is played. Additionally, a pop-up displays a text version of the help prompt. Depending on how voice recognition was initiated, the Help pop-up will either display on the instrument cluster or the infotainment touchscreen. Touch the Dismiss button to make the pop-up go away.

Pressing while the help prompt is playing will terminate the prompt and a beep will be heard. Doing this will stop the help prompt so that a voice command can be used.

Voice Recognition for the Radio

Some audio screens have a voice recognition button () to launch audio voice recognition. If the voice button is touched in a radio screen, the voice commands for radio and media features are available.

“Switch to AM” : Switch bands to AM and tune to the last AM radio station.

“Switch to FM” : Switch bands to FM and tune to the last FM radio station.

“Tune to <AM frequency> AM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “nine fifty”).

“Tune to <FM frequency> FM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “one o one point one”).

Voice Recognition for Audio My Media

If browsing My Media when the voice button is selected, the voice recognition commands for My Media features are available.

“Go to Artist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific artist name.

“Go to Artist <artist name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Go to Album” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific album name.

“Go to Album <album name>” : Begin playback of the identified album name in the command.

“Go to Song” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific song name.

“Go to Song <song name>” : Begin playback of the identified song name in the command.

“Play Genre” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific genre.

“Play Genre <genre name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Go to Playlist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific playlist name.

“Go to Playlist <playlist name>” : Begin playback of the identified playlist in the command.

“Play <device name>” : Play music from a specific device identified by name. The device name is the name displayed on the screen when the device is first selected as an audio sourced.

“Go to Chapter” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Go to Chapter <chapter name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Go to Audiobook” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Go to Audiobook <audiobook name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Episode” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Episode <episode name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Podcast” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Podcast <podcast name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“MyMedia” : Begin a dialog to enter the desired media content.

Handling Large Amounts of Media Content

It is expected that large amounts of media content will be brought into the vehicle. It may be necessary to handle large amounts of media content in a different way than smaller amounts of media. The system may limit the options of voice recognition by not allowing selection of song titles by voice at the highest level if the number of songs exceeds the maximum limit.

Voice command option changes through media content limits are:

- Song files including other individual files of all media types such as audiobook chapters and podcast episodes.
- Album type folders including types such as albums and audiobooks.

There are no restrictions if the number of song files and albums is less than 4,000. When the number of song files connected to the system is between 4,000 and 8,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like “Play <song name>.”

The restriction is that the command “Go to Song” must be spoken first; the system will then ask for the song name. The reply command would be to say the name of the song to play.

Similar limits exist for album content. If there are more than 4,000 albums, but less than 8,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like, “Play <album name>.” The command “Go to Album” must first be spoken; the system will then ask for the album name. The reply would be to say the name of the album to play.

Once the number of songs has exceeded approximately 8,000, there is no support for accessing the songs directly through voice commands. There will still be access to the media content by using commands for playlists, artists, and genres.

The access commands for playlists, artists, and genres are prohibited after the number of this type of media exceeds 4,000.

The system will provide feedback the first time voice recognition is initiated if it has become apparent that any of these limits are reached during a device initialising process.

Voice Recognition for Navigation

“Navigation” : Begin a dialogue to enter specific destination information.

“Navigation Commands” : Begin a dialogue to enter specific destination information.

“Destination Address” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination address, which includes the entire address consisting of the house number, street name, and city and state.

“Destination Intersection” : Begin a dialogue to enter a specific destination intersection.

“Destination Place of Interest” : Begin a dialogue to enter a destination Place of Interest category or major brand name (if equipped).

Not all brand names of businesses are available for voice entry. Most major chains, such as chains with more than 20 locations, should be available to search for by name, but the name must be precisely spoken. Nicknames or short names for the businesses will not likely be found. Lesser known businesses might have to be located by category, such as fast food, hotels, or banks.

“Destination Contact” : Begin a dialogue to enter a specific destination contact name.

“Cancel Route” : End route guidance.

Voice Recognition for the Phone

“Call <contact name>” : Initiate a call to an entered contact. The command may include location if the contact has location numbers stored.

“Call <contact name> At Home,” “At Work,” “On Mobile,” or “On Other” : Initiate a call to an entered contact and location at home, at work, on mobile device, or on another phone.

“Call <phone number>” : Initiate a call to a standard phone number seven or 10 digits in length.

“Pair Phone” : Begin the Bluetooth pairing process. Follow instructions on the radio display.

“Switch Phone” : Select a different phone for outgoing calls.

“Voice Keypad” : Begins a dialogue to enter special numbers like international numbers. The numbers can be entered in groups of digits with each group of digits being repeated back by the system. If the group of digits is not correct, the command “Delete” will remove the last group of digits and allow them to be re-entered. Once the entire number has been entered, the command “Call” will start dialling the number.

“Voice Mail” : Initiate a call to voice mail numbers.

Voice Pass-Thru

Voice pass-thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the mobile phone, for example, Siri or Voice Command. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide to see if the mobile phone supports this feature. To activate the phone voice recognition system, press and hold on the steering wheel for a few seconds.

Phone

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth-capable system can interact with many mobile phones, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the mobile phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimise driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the mobile phone. Organise the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.
- Pair mobile phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all mobile phones. See “Pairing” in this section.

⚠ Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

⚠ Danger

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable mobile phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while in ON/RUN or ACC/ ACCESSORY. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m. Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system.

Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

(Push to Talk) : Press to answer incoming calls, confirm system information, and start voice recognition.

(End Call) : Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System* ⇨ *93*.

Phone : Touch this screen button on the Home Page to enter the phone main menu.

Audio System

When using the Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Turn the volume knob during a call to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing Information

- A Bluetooth phone with music capability can be paired to the vehicle as a phone and a music player at the same time.
- Up to 10 devices can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the mobile phone changes or the mobile phone is deleted from the system.
- One Bluetooth device can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired mobile phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired mobile phone in the order that they were last used in the system. To link to a different paired phone, see “Linking to a Different Phone” later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phone and select Pair Device.
3. A four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN) appears on the display. The PIN, if required, may be used in Step 5.
4. Start the pairing process on the mobile phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process.
5. Locate “MyLink” on the phone's display. Follow the instructions on the mobile phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 3 or confirm the six-digit code shown on the display. After the PIN is successfully entered or the code is confirmed, the system responds with “<Device name> has been successfully paired” when the pairing process is complete.
6. If “MyLink” does not appear, turn the phone off or remove the phone battery and retry.
7. If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, select always accept and allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.
8. Repeat Steps 1−7 to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phones.

Disconnecting a Connected Phone

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phones.
3. Touch the ✕ next to the phone to disconnect and follow the on screen prompts.

Deleting a Paired Phone

Only disconnected phones can be deleted.

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phones.
3. Touch the ⊖ next to the phone to delete and follow the on screen prompts.

Linking to a Different Phone

To link to a different phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and paired to the Bluetooth system.

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phones.
3. Select the new phone to link to from the not connected device list.

Switching to Handset or Handsfree Mode

To switch between handset or handsfree mode, touch the Phone icon on the Home Page to display “Call View.”

- While the active call is hands-free, touch the Handset screen button to switch to the handset mode. The screen button changes to Handsfree once the Bluetooth device confirms it is operating as handset.
- While the active call is handset, touch the Handsfree screen button to switch to the hands free mode. The screen button changes to Handset once the Bluetooth device confirms it is operating as handsfree.

Making a Call Using Contacts and Recent Calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal mobile phone contact information for all phones that support the Phone Book feature. Become familiar with the phone settings and operation. Verify the mobile phone supports this feature.

When supported, the Contacts and Recent Calls menus are automatically available.

The Contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the mobile phone.

The Recent Calls menu accesses the recent call list(s) from your mobile phone.

To make a call using the Contacts menu:

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Contacts.
3. Select the name to call.
4. Select the desired contact number to call.

To make a call using the Recent Calls menu:

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Recent.
3. Select the name or number to call.

Making a Call Using the Keypad

To make a call by dialling the numbers:

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Keypad and enter a phone number.
3. Select Call to start dialling the number.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Accepting a Call

There are a few ways to accept a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Answer on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

There are a few ways to decline a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the phone service carrier to work.

Accepting a Call

There are a few ways to accept a call-waiting call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Switch on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

There are a few ways to decline a call-waiting call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls, touch the phone icon on the Home Page to display “Call View.” While in Call View, touch the call information of the call on hold to change calls.

Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the phone service carrier to work.

To start a three-way call while in a current call:

1. In the Call View, select Add to add another call.
2. Initiate the second call by selecting from RECENT, CONTACTS, or KEYPAD.
3. When the second call is active, touch Merge to conference the three-way call together.
4. Once all calls are merged, the Merge button becomes an Unmerge button. Touch to unmerge the calls. Some phone service carriers may not allow a merged call to become unmerged.

Ending a Call

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch End on the infotainment display to end all existing calls, or touch End next to a call to end only that call.

Some phone service carriers may not allow a merged call to become unmerged.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system.

1. Touch the Phone screen button.

2. While in the Call View, touch ⌃ to raise the Interaction Selector.
3. Select Keypad and enter the number.

Voice Mail

The default voice mail number is the phone number of the currently connected phone. The voice mail number can be changed in Bluetooth settings.

To dial a voice mail number:

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Voice Mail.
3. Select Call.
4. Enter the DTMF tones using the keypad if needed.

Text Messaging

If equipped, the infotainment system may allow text messages to be received and replied to. Received messages can also be read aloud.

Before using the text messaging feature, check to see if the phone is compatible.

See your dealer for details.

Text Menu

Inbox : Touch to display incoming messages. To view a message, press on the name of the sender. Press 🔊 to listen to the text message. Press BACK on the faceplate or press the Back screen button to go back to the previous menu.

Settings : See “Text Settings” later in this section.

Reply : Touch to reply using a predefined text message. See “Text Settings.”

Call : Touch to place a call to the sender of the text message.

Note

- There may be previous configuration required in your mobile to have this function working properly.
- Due to the variety of devices and their firmware versions, your device may respond differently when performing this function.
- Any inquiries regrading your phone functionality, refer to the device manual.

Viewing a Text Message

While viewing a text message:

- Touch Reply to reply using a predefined text message.
- Touch Call to place a call to the sender of the text message.

Viewing Sender Information

If equipped, touch the name of the sender to view sender information if this information matches contact information already stored.

Select a Predefined Message : Touch to select from a set of quick messages. Touch the message to send.

Predefined Messages

These are short text messages that can be used to send so responses will not have to be typed.

The messages can be deleted or a new message can be added.

To add a new message:

1. Touch Text Settings, then press Manage Predefined Messages.
2. While in the predefined messages list view, select Add New Predefined Message and a keyboard displays.
3. Type a new message and touch the Check button when done to add the message. Press BACK on the faceplate or touch the Back screen button to go back to the predefined messages list.
4. Touch ⊖ to delete a predefined message

Memory Full

This message may display if there is no more room on the phone to store messages.

Text Settings

Text Alerts : When on, this feature will display an alert when a new text message has been received. Touch to turn on or off.

Manage Predefined Messages : Touch to add, change, or delete predefined messages.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

If equipped, Android Auto™ and/or Apple CarPlay™ capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. If available, a PROJECTION icon will appear on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google™ Play store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the compatible phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use the device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.

The PROJECTION icon on the Home Page will change to Android Auto or Apple CarPlay depending on the phone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, press the Android Auto and/or Apple Carplay icon on the Home Page to launch.

For further information about Android Auto and Apple CarPlay in the vehicle, seek the assistance of your dealer.

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google’s terms and privacy policy. CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple’s terms and privacy policy.

For Android Auto support see https://support.google.com/androidauto or Apple CarPlay support at https://www.apple.com/br/ios/carplay/. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time.

If Android Auto device is connected while another device was paired, the switch devices pop up message will appear as follows:

“Connecting Android Auto, will disconnect Bluetooth Device (Name)."

Note

For using Android Auto function, the date of Infotainment System should be the same as the Android Auto device.

Note

For your safety, some applications are disabled while your vehicle is in motion.

Note

To end Android Auto, disconnect the phone from the USB port or change the USB setting on the phone.

In some cases, it might be necessary to unpair the phone from the radio before plugging the USB cable to start the Android Auto.

Using Voice Recognition

Using Bluetooth Voice Recognition

To use voice recognition, press the button on the steering wheel. Use the commands below for the various voice features. For additional information, say “Help” while in a voice recognition menu. See *Voice Recognition* ⇨ *116* for help using voice recognition commands.

Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands.

Using the “Dial” or “Call” Command

To call a number:

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial” or “Call” followed by the complete phone number.

Use the “Voice Keypad” command for international numbers or special numbers which include * or #.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

To call using a contact from your phone book:

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial” or “Call” and then say the contact name. For example “Call John at Work.”

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the “Switch Phone” Command

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.

2. After the tone, say “Switch Phone.” The system displays a list of phones to select.

Using the “Voice Keypad” Command

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Voice Keypad.” The system allows entry of special numbers and characters.

Using the “Voice Mail” Command

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Voice Mail.” The system dials the voice mail number of the connected phone.

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained. This includes phone pairing information. For directions on how to delete this information, see “Deleting a Paired Phone.”

Settings

Various settings for the infotainment system and vehicle can be changed via the Settings menu.

Some settings for different drivers can be memorised individually for each vehicle key.

Press and select SETTINGS on the home screen.

Note

Depending on vehicle model and options, some of the functions described below may not be available.

Time and Date

Touch SET TIME to edit the time and then touch ∧ or ∨ to increase or decrease hours, minutes, and AM or PM. Press 12Hr or 24Hr for 12 or 24 hour clock.

Touch SET DATE to edit the date and then press ∧ or ∨ to increase or decrease month, day, or year.

Touch CLOCK DISPLAY to choose ON or OFF to show the time in the screen.

Language

This will set the display language in the radio, instrument panel, and voice recognition. Press Language and select the appropriate language. Press ❮ to go back to the previous menu.

Valet Mode

This will lock the infotainment system and steering wheel controls. It may also limit top speed, power, and access to vehicle storage locations (if equipped).

To enable Valet Mode:

1. Enter a four-digit code on the keypad.
2. Touch Enter to go to the confirmation screen.
3. Re-enter the four-digit code.

Touch LOCK or UNLOCK to lock or unlock the system. Touch ❮ to go back to the previous menu.

Radio

Touch to display the Radio Menu and the following may display:

- Manage Favourites: Touch to highlight a favourite to edit. Touch Rename to rename the favourite or Delete to delete it. Touch and hold the station to drag it to a new location. Touch Done to go back to the previous menu.
- Number of Favorites Shown: Touch to set the number of favourites to display. Select Auto, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, or 60. Auto will adjust the number of favourite locations that can be seen. Touch ❮ to go back to the previous menu.
- Audible Touch Feedback: This feature adjusts the sound of the touch. This feature can be turned ON or OFF.
- Auto Volume: If equipped, this feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *94*.
- Maximum Startup Volume: This feature sets the maximum startup volume. If the vehicle is started and the volume is greater than this level, the volume is adjusted to this level. To set the maximum startup volume, touch + or − to increase or decrease. Touch ❮ to go back to the previous menu.

Vehicle

Adjusts the vehicle personalisation settings. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *80*.

Bluetooth

From the Bluetooth screen button, the following may be displayed:

- Pair New Device: Touch to add a new device.

- Device Management: Touch to connect to a different phone source, disconnect a phone, or delete a phone.
- Ringtones: Touch to change the ring tone for the specific phone. The phone does not need to be connected to change the ring tone.
- Voice Mail Numbers: This feature displays the voice mail number for all connected phones. The voice mail number may be changed by touching the EDIT button, typing in the new number, and touching SAVE. Touch ❮ to go back to the previous menu.
- Text Message Alerts: This feature will turn text message alerts on or off. Touch Text Message Alerts and then select OFF or ON. Touch ❮ to go back to the previous menu. See *Text Messaging* ⇨ *127*.

Apple CarPlay

This feature turns the Projection (Apple CarPlay) function ON or OFF.

Select Manage Apple CarPlay Devices to display a list of Apple CarPlay devices registered in the system. Apple CarPlay must be on for this function to be accessed.

Android Auto

This feature turns the Projection (Android Auto) function ON or OFF.

Select Manage Android Auto Devices to display a list of Android devices registered in the system. Android Auto must be on for this function to be accessed.

Voice

From the Voice screen button, the following may be displayed:

- Confidence Threshold: Select Confirm More for a system response to a command. Select Confirm Less for the system to proceed with the command without responding.
- Prompt Length: Select Short for brief, direct feedback or Long for more information feedback. Touch ❮ Back to go to the previous menu.
- Audio Feedback Speed: Touch Slow, Medium, or Fast for feedback speed. Touch ❮ to go back to the previous menu.
- Display “What can I say?” Tips: Touch ON or OFF to change the display tips.

Display

From the Display screen button, the following may be displayed:

- Calibrate Touchscreen: Touch to calibrate the touchscreen and follow the prompts. Touch ❮ to go back to the previous menu.
- Turn Display Off: Touch to turn the display off. Touch anywhere on the display area or any faceplate button again to turn the display on.

Rear Camera

Touch to display the Rear Camera menu. See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC)* ⇨ *209*.

- Guidance Lines: This feature can be turned ON or OFF.
- Rear Park Assist Symbols: This feature can be turned ON or OFF.

Return to Factory Settings

Touching Continue restores all factory settings.

Select Return to Factory Settings and the following list may display:

- Restore Vehicle Settings: Restores factory vehicle settings. TouchRestore Vehicle Settings. Touch Cancel or Continue. If continue is touched, a confirmation pop-up will appear indicating the vehicle settings have been restored.
- Clear All Private Data: If available, use to erase personal private data before loaning or selling the vehicle. TouchClear All Private Data. Touch Cancel or Continue. Touch the ❮ Back screen button to go back to the last menu.
- Restore Radio Settings: Restores factory radio settings. TouchRestore Radio Settings. Touch Cancel or Continue. If continue is touched, a confirmation pop-up will appear indicating the radio settings have been restored.

Press ◀ BACK on the faceplate or touch the Back screen button to go back to the main settings menu.

Software Information

Select to display software information and version and to update the system software. See your dealer.

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance. iPhone®, iPod®, iPod classic®, iPod nano®, iPod shuffle®, and iPod touch® are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Android Auto is a trademark of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

RMVB

Portions of this software are included under license from RealNetworks, Inc. Copyright 1995-2012, RealNetworks, Inc. All rights reserved

Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Schedule I: Gracenote EULA (if equipped)

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.

Music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote may apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such

content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR

INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2014. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

MPEG4–AVC (H.264)

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

MPEG4–Visual

USE OF THIS PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

MP3

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Map End User License Agreement

END USER TERMS

The Map Data Disc (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this “End User License Agreement”) and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE North America, LLC (“HERE”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®.

HERE holds a nonexclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information. © United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled, or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only: You agree to use this Data for the solely personal, noncommercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, mobile phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used, and the nature of collecting

comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty

This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations, or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN “AS IS” AND “WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS” AND BOSCH (AND THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY BOSCH (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSORS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Disclaimer of Liability

HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories, and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct

product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations. Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims, and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Maps for Life

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

NAME:

HERE North America, LLC

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 2014 HERE North America, LLC. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE North America, LLC prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Unicode

Copyright © 1991-2014 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Free Type Project

Portions of this software are copyright © 2014 The FreeType Project (http://www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

Open Source SW

The open source code used in this device can be downloaded at the webpage shown in the information at the instrument panel display. Further information concerning the OSS licenses is shown in the instrument panel display.

QNX

Portions of this software are copyright © 2008-2014, QNX Software Systems. All rights reserved.

Part C – EULA

Copyright 2014, Software Systems GmbH & Co. KG. All Rights Reserved.

The product you have purchased ("Product") contains Software (Runtime Configuration No. 505962; "Software") which is distributed by or on behalf of the Product manufacturer "Manufacturer") under license from Software Systems Co. ("QSSC"). You may only use the Software in the Product and in compliance with the license terms below.

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, QSSC hereby grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable license to use the Software in the Product for the purpose intended by the Manufacturer. If permitted by the Manufacturer, or by applicable law, you may make one backup copy of the Software as part of the Product software. QSSC and its licensors reserve all license+C31 rights not expressly granted herein, and retain all right, title and interest in and to all copies of the Software, including all intellectual property rights therein. Unless required by applicable law you may not reproduce, distribute or transfer, or de-compile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to unbundle, reverse engineer, modify or create derivative works of, the Software. You agree: (1) not to remove, cover or alter any proprietary notices, labels or marks in or on the Software, and to ensure that all copies bear any notice contained on the original; and (2) not to export the Product or the Software in contravention of applicable export control laws.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, QSSC AND ITS LICENSORS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT,

MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. ANY WARRANTIES OR OTHER PROVISIONS OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) THAT DIFFER FROM THIS LICENSE ARE OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) ALONE AND NOT BY QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS. YOU ASSUME ANY RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE UNDER THIS LICENSE.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW (SUCH AS IN THE CASE OF DELIBERATE OR GROSSLY NEGLIGENT ACTS), IN NO EVENT SHALL QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS BE LIABLE TO YOU UNDER ANY LEGAL THEORY, WHETHER IN TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), CONTRACT OR OTHERWISE, FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER ARISING AS A RESULT OF THIS LICENSE OR OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, PRODUCT FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR ANY AND ALL OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES), EVEN IF QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Linotype

Helvetica is a trademark of Linotype Corp. registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain other jurisdictions in the name of Linotype Corp. or its licensee Linotype GmbH.

Usage in text form of each of the Licensed Trademarks is:

The trademark attribution requirements for the Licensed Trademarks may be viewed at http://www.linotype.com/2061-19414/trademarks.html.

END USER NOTICE

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

Introduction

Infotainment

Two infotainment systems are available.

This section describes the infotainment system without built-in Navigation system. For the system with built-in Navigation, see *Introduction* ⇨ *90*.

Note

Some functions of the Infotainment System may not be compatible with all phones or smartphones available in the market. Such features also depend on the connection with the internet and the service offered by phone companies and apps availability.

Read the following pages to become familiar with these features.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

⚠ Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These functions may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation, faceplate buttons, and screen buttons.
- Set up the audio by pre-setting favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by touching a single button or by using a single voice command if equipped with Bluetooth phone capability.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

The infotainment system has an electronic security system installed to prevent theft.

The infotainment system only works in the vehicle in which it was first installed, and cannot be used in another vehicle.

Overview

1. ⏻
   - Press to turn the power on.
   - Press and hold to turn the power off.
   - Press to mute the system when on.
   - Turn to decrease or increase the volume.
2. ⏭
   - Radio: Press to automatically search for available radio stations with good reception.
   - USB/Bluetooth Music/ Movies/Pictures: Press to go to the next content. Press and hold to fast forward.
3. ⏮
   - Radio: Press to automatically search for available radio stations with good reception.
   - USB/Bluetooth Music/ Movies/Pictures: Press to go to the previous content. Press and hold to fast rewind.
4. ⌂
   - Press to go to the Home Page. See *Home Page* ⇨ *144*.

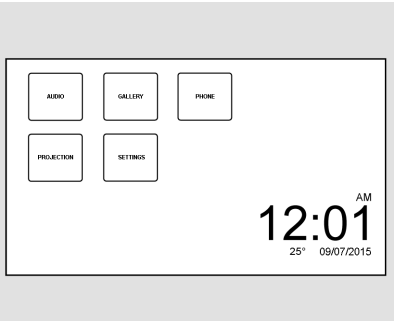
5. ✆
   - Press this button to access the Phone screen. (If there is no connected phone, the monitor will show the Device Management Menu to allow you to connect a previously paired phone or establish a new Bluetooth enabled phone connection.)

Home Page

Touchscreen Buttons

Touchscreen buttons show on the screen when available. When a function is unavailable, the button may gray out. When a function is selected, the button may highlight.

Home Page Features



Press ⌂ to go to the Home Page.

Audio : Touch to select AM, FM, USB/iPod/Bluetooth Audio, or AUX.

Gallery : Touch to view a picture or watch a movie.

Phone : Touch to activate the phone features (if equipped). See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *122*.

Projection : Touch to access supported devices when connected. See *USB Port* ⇨ *97*.

Settings : Touch to access the Settings menu. See *Operation* ⇨ *145*.

Edit Mode

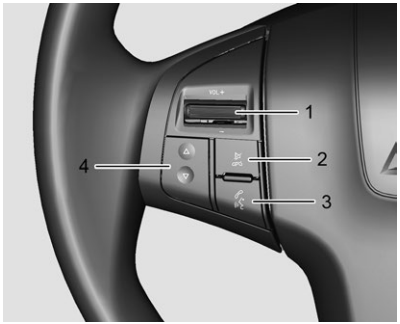
In edit mode, the home page can be rearranged.

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Press and hold the any menu to enter the edit mode.
3. Drag and drop the desired menu to change the position.
4. Press ⌂ to exit the edit mode.

Note

- The edit mode exits after a timeout of inactivity of 30 seconds.
- If you drag and drop the menu on the arrow, the menu will be arranged on the previous or next page.
- The maximum number of edit mode pages is three.

Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped)



1. **Volume** button
   - Move the button upward to VOL + button to increase the volume.
   - Move the button downward to - button to decrease the volume.
2. button
   - Press this button to decline an incoming call or end a current call.
   - Press this button to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.
3. button
   - When there is no connected Bluetooth device, the Infotainment system executes the Bluetooth device connection.
   - When there is a connected Bluetooth device, press the button to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

     If the customer's connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold the button to activate the phone's SR (Speech recognition) mode.
   - If an iPhone is connected, press and hold to enter the Siri function.
4. (seek)
   - When are pressed up/down.

     In Radio modes, changes broadcast frequencies saved in favourite.

     In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, changes the file.
   - When are pressed and held.

     In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, rewind or fast forward the file.

Operation

Radio Controls

The infotainment system is operated by using the pushbuttons, menus shown on the display, and steering wheel controls.

Turning the System On or Off

⏻ **:** Press to turn the radio on. Press and hold to turn the radio off.

Automatic Switch-Off

If the infotainment system has been turned on after the ignition is turned off, the system will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

If the ignition is turned off and the user opens the driver door of the vehicle, the system is turned off automatically.

Volume Control

⏻ **:** Turn to increase or decrease. Press when the system is on to mute and unmute the system.

Note

When changing the audio source, a difference in volume may be experienced.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

⌂ **:** Press to go to the Home Page.

⏻ **:** Press to turn on, mute, or unmute the system. Press and hold to turn off the system.

Selecting a Band

1. Press ⌂.
2. TouchAUDIO.
3. TouchSource.
4. Select AM, FM, DAB, USB, Bluetooth or AUX input.

The last station that was playing starts playing again.

Selecting a Station

Seek Tuning

If the radio station is not known:

Press ⏮ or ⏭ to automatically search for available radio stations.

Direct Tune

From the AM or FM menu:

1. TouchTune.
2. Enter the station number.
3. TouchGo.

Favorite

1. Touch < or > to scroll through the favorite pages.
2. Touch the station to select it.

Station List

1. From the AM or FM menu, touch Menu.
2. Select Station List.
3. Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the list. Touch the station to select it.

Update Station List

- From the AM or FM menu, touch Menu, then touch Update Station List. The broadcasting list updating will begin.

- During the AM or FM broadcasting list update, touch Cancel to stop the updates.

RDS

Setting the RDS function in the FM radio RDS supported.

- From the FM menu, turn on or off the RDS.

Menu

Touch to choose between available menus for the current source.

Storing a Station as a Favorite

Stations from all bands can be stored in any order in the favorite pages.

Up to 25 stations can be stored.

Storing Stations

To store the station to a position in the list, touch the corresponding button 1−5 until a beep is heard.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Touch < or > to select the desired page of saved favorites.
3. Touch and hold any of the preset buttons to save the current radio station to that button of the selected favorites page.

To change a preset button, tune to the new desired radio station and touch and hold the preset button.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically reduces interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

Radio Reception (DAB)

Digital Audio Broadcasting

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) is an innovative and universal broadcasting system.

DAB Radio

Listening to DAB radio

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Select DAB on the screen. The DAB radio of the most recent listened station is displayed.

Searching for Broadcasting Automatically

Press ⏮ or ⏭ on the control panel to automatically search for available station with good reception

Storing a Broadcasting as a Favourite

1. Select the desired station.
2. Touch < or > to select the desired page of saved favourites.
3. Touch and hold any of the preset buttons to save the current radio station to that button of the selected favourites page.

Up to 5 favourites pages can be saved, and each page can store up to five radio station.

To change a preset button, tune to the new desired radio station and touch and hold the preset button.

Listening to PRESET Button Directly

1. Touch < or > to select the desired page of saved favourites.
2. Touch any of the preset buttons to directly listen to the radio station saved to that button.

General Operation of the Menu

1. Touch Menu on the DAB radio screen.
2. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.

Categories

1. From the DAB menu, press theCategories to display the DAB category list. The DAB category list information is displayed.
2. Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the list. Touch the station to select it.

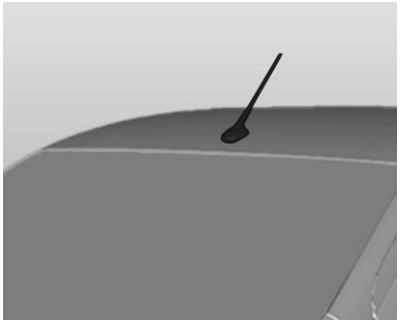
Note

In case of the DAB mode, only the selected category is displayed in the category list.

Update Station List

1. From the DAB menu, press theUpdate Station List to display the update DAB station list. The DAB broadcasting list update will proceed.
2. During the DAB broadcasting list update, press Cancel to stop it from saving changes.

Fixed Mast Antenna



To remove the roof antenna, rotate it anticlockwise. To install the roof antenna, rotate it clockwise.

Caution
To avoid damaging the antenna or the roof panel, be sure to remove the antenna before entering the automatic car wash or a place with a low ceiling.

Install the antenna firmly.

Whenever using the roof rack system, check if the antenna is not obstructing the area that is being used by the roof rack system or the cargo.

Audio Players

USB Port

Using the USB Port

The infotainment system can play music or movies by connecting a device to the USB port.

USB Support

The vehicle may have a USB port on the main storage under the armrest, and if so uses the USB 2.0 standard.

Not all iPods and USB drives are compatible with the USB port.

Make sure the iPod has the latest firmware from Apple® for proper operation. iPod firmware can be updated using the latest iTunes® application. See www.apple.com/br/itunes.

For help with identifying your iPod, go to www.apple.com/br/support.

The USB port can play both lower and upper case .mp3, .wma, .ogg, and .wav files stored on a USB storage device.

USB Supported Folder Structure

The infotainment system supports up to 15 stages of folder structure.

Connecting a USB Storage Device or iPod/iPhone

To connect a USB storage device, connect the device to the USB port.

To connect an iPod/iPhone, connect one end of the device's cable to the iPod/iPhone and the other end to the USB port.

The iPod/iPhone charges while it is connected to the vehicle if the ignition is in position 1 or 2. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *183*. When the vehicle is turned off, the iPod/iPhone automatically powers off and will not charge or draw power from the vehicle's battery.

For more information on USB usage, see “Audio System Information” under later in this section.

USB Port (Audio System)

The infotainment system can play the music files contained in the USB storage device or iPod/iPhone products.

Audio System Information

Using MP3/WMA/OGG/WAV Files

- Music files with .mp3, .wma, .ogg, and .wav file name extensions can be played.
- MP3 files that can be played: Bit rate: 8 kbps to 320 kbps. Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, and 16 kHz.
- Files with a bit rate above 128 kbps will result in higher quality sound.
- ID3 Tag information for MP3 files, such as the album name and the artist, can be displayed.
- To display album title, track title, and artist information, the file should be compatible with the ID3 Tag V1 and V2 formats.

Using USB Storage Devices and iPod/iPhone

- Use a USB or flash memory type storage device. Do not connect using a USB adaptor.
- Do not connect and reconnect the USB device repeatedly in a short time, as this may cause static electricity and problems using the device.
- Use a USB device with a metal connecting terminal.
- Connection with i-Stick Type USB storage devices may be faulty due to vehicle vibration.
- Do not touch the USB connecting terminal.
- The time it takes to process files will depend on the USB storage device type and capacity, and the type of files stored.
- Some USB storage device files may not be compatible.

- Up to two USB devices and one iPod can be played through a USB hub. All devices may not be supported, depending on the performance of the USB hub. If there is not enough power supply, it may not operate normally.
- Do not disconnect the USB storage device while it is playing. This may cause damage to the product or affect the performance of the USB device.
- Disconnect the USB storage device when the ignition is turned off. If the ignition is turned on while the USB device is connected, the USB device may be damaged or may not operate normally.
- USB storage devices can only be connected for playing music/ movies and viewing photo files.
- Do not use the USB terminal to charge USB accessory equipment. The heat generated may cause performance issues or damage.
- Music files to which Digital Right Management (DRM) is applied cannot be played.
- Some iPod/iPhone product models may not support the connectivity or functionality of this product.
- Only connect the iPod/iPhone with connection cables supported by iPod/iPhone products. Other connection cables cannot be used.
- The iPod/iPhone may be damaged if it is connected to the vehicle with the ignition on. When not in use, disconnect the iPod/iPhone.
- When the iPod/iPhone is connected to the USB port with an iPod/iPhone cable, Bluetooth music is not supported.
- The iPod/iPhone playback functions and the information displayed may be different when played on the infotainment system.

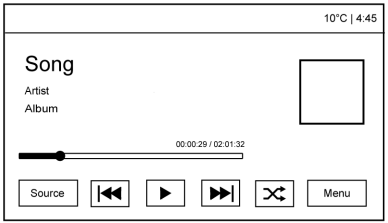
	Step 1	Step 2	Step 3	Step 4
Playlist	Playlist	Songs		
Artists	Artists	Albums	Songs	
Albums	Albums	Songs		
Songs	Songs			
Genres	Genres	Artists	Albums	Songs
Composer	Composer	Albums	Songs	
Audiobooks	Tracks			

- Refer to the table for the classification items related to the search function provided by the iPod/iPhone.

USB Player

Playing Music from a USB Device

- Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- Play will start automatically after the system has finished reading the USB device.
- If a non-readable USB device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.



If the USB device is already connected:

- Press ⌂.
- Touch AUDIO.
- Touch Source.
- Touch USB.

To stop the USB device and select another media source, touch Source, then select the other source.

To remove the USB device, select another function, then remove the USB device.

Pause

- Touch ⏸ to pause.
- Touch ▶ to resume.

Changing to Next/Previous Files

- Touch ⏭ to change to the next file.
- Touch ⏮ within five seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch ⏮ after five seconds of the playback time.

Scanning Forwards or Backwards

Touch and hold ⏮ or ⏭ during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Playing a File Randomly

Touch ⤮ during playback.

- ON : Plays all files randomly.
- OFF : Returns to normal playback.

Using the USB Music Menu

- Touch Menu during playback.
- Touch the desired menu.

Browse Music

1. Touch Browse Music.
2. Touch the desired music.

Tone Settings

- Touch Tone Settings. The Tone Settings menu is displayed. See “Tone Settings” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation* ⇨ *145*.

Auto Volume

- Touch Auto Volume. The Auto Volume menu is displayed. See “Auto Volume” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation* ⇨ *145*.

MTP (Media Transfer Protocol)

- Connect a MTP supported device.
- Play will start automatically after the system has finished reading the MTP device.
- If a non-readable MTP device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.

iPod/iPhone Player

This feature is limited to models supporting the iPod/iPhone connection.

Playing Music Files

- Connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB port.
- Play will start from the previously played point after the system has finished reading the USB device.
- If a non-readable USB device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.

If the iPod/iPhone is already connected:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Touch iPod.

To stop the device and select another media source, touch Source, then select the other source.

To remove the device, select another function, then remove the device.

Pause

- Touch ⏸ to pause.
- Touch ▶ to resume.

Changing to Next/Previous Song

- Touch ⏭ to change to the next song.
- Touch ⏮ within three seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch ⏮ after three seconds of the playback time.

Scanning Forwards or Backwards

Touch and hold ⏮ or ⏭ during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Playing a File Randomly

Touch ⤮ during playback.

- ON: Plays all files randomly.
- OFF: Returns to normal playback.

Using the iPod Menu

- Touch Menu during playback.
- Touch the appropriate play mode.

Browse Music

1. Touch Browse Music.
2. Touch the desired music.

Tone Settings

- Touch Tone Settings. The Tone Settings menu is displayed. See “Tone Settings” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation* ⇨ *145*.

Auto Volume

- Touch Auto Volume. The Auto Volume menu is displayed. See “Auto Volume” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation* ⇨ *145*.

USB Port (Picture System)

The infotainment system can view picture files stored on a USB storage device and devices that support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP).

Picture System Information

- Supported file extensions: .jpg, .bmp, .png, .gif.
- Animated GIF files are not supported.
- Some files may not operate due to a different recording format or the condition of the file.

Viewing Pictures

1. Connect the USB device to the USB port.
2. Touch the screen to open to full screen. Touch the screen again to return to the previous screen.

If the compatible USB device is already connected:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch GALLERY.
3. Touch 👤.

Caution
Some features are disabled while the vehicle is in motion.

Viewing a Slide Show

1. Touch ▶ from the picture screen.
2. Touch the screen to cancel the slide show during the slide show playback.

Viewing a Previous or Next Picture

Touch < or > from the picture screen.

Rotating a Picture

Touch ↻ from the picture screen.

Enlarging a Picture

Touch 🔍 from the picture screen.

Using the USB Picture Menu

1. Touch MENU from the picture screen.
2. Touch the appropriate menu:
   - Slide Show Time: Allows selection of the slide show interval.
   - Clock, Temp. Display: Allows selection of On or Off to show the clock and temperature on the full screen.
   - Display Settings: Adjusts for Brightness and Contrast.
3. Touch ↩ to exit.

USB Port (Movie System)

The infotainment system can play movie files stored on a USB storage device and devices that support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP).

Movie System Information

- Available resolution: Lower than 1280 x 720 (W x H) pixels.
- Frame rate: Less than 30 fps.
- Playable movie file: mp4. The playable movie file may not be played according to the codec format.
- Playable codec format: H.264 codec.
- Playable Audio format: MP3, AC3, AAC, WMA.
- Max video bitrate:
  - mpeg-1: 8 Mbps
  - mpeg-4 (mpg4, mp42, mp43): 4 Mbps
- Max audio bitrate:
  - mp3: 320 Kbps
  - wma: 320 Kbps
  - ac-3: 640 Kbps
  - aac: 449 Kbps
- Movie files to which Digital Right Management (DRM) is applied may not be played.

Playing a Movie File

1. Connect the USB device to the USB port.
2. Touch the screen to open to full screen. Touch the screen again to return to the previous screen.

If the USB device is already connected:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch GALLERY.
3. Touch ⧉.

Movie is not available while driving.

Pause

- Touch ❚❚ to pause.
- Touch ▶ to resume.

Changing to Next/Previous Movie

- Touch ▶| to change to the next file.
- Touch |◀ within five seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current Movie

Touch |◀ after five seconds of the playback time.

Scanning Forwards or Backwards

Touch and hold |◀ or ▶| during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Viewing Full Screen

Touch ⛶ from the movie screen. Touch ⛶ again to return to the previous screen.

Using the USB Movie Menu

1. Touch MENU from the movie screen.

2. Touch the appropriate menu:
   - Tone Settings: shows the sound setup. See “Tone Settings” in *Operation* ⇨ *145*.
   - Auto Volume: Automatically adjusts the volume according to the speed of the vehicle. See “Auto Volume” in *Operation* ⇨ *145*.
   - Clock Temp. Display: Allows selection of On or Off to show the clock and temperature on the full screen.
   - Display Settings: Adjusts for brightness and contrast.
3. Touch ⮌ to exit.

Auxiliary Devices

Using the Auxiliary Input Jack (if equipped)

Settings menus and functions may vary depending on vehicle options.

If equipped, the auxiliary input jack can be used to connect external audio devices such as an iPod®, iPhone®, MP3 player, CD player or other supported device for use as another source for audio listening. This input jack is not an audio output; do not plug headphones into the front auxiliary input jack.

If equipped with auxiliary input jack the infotainment system can play music connected by the auxiliary device.

Playing Music

To play music from the device, if the device is already connected:

1. Press ⌂.
2. TouchAUDIO.
3. TouchSource.
4. Touch AUX.
5. Touch ⮌.

To adjust the tone settings, see "Preset Tone Settings" and "Custom Tone Settings" under "System Settings" in *Operation* ⇨ *145*.

Phone

Bluetooth

If equipped with Bluetooth® capability, the system can interact with many Bluetooth phones, PDAs, or other devices to:

- Place and receive hands-free calls.
- Transmit hands-free data.
- Play audio streaming files.

The device must be paired first. See “Pairing” later in this section.

To minimise driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the mobile phone. Organise the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.

- Pair mobile phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all mobile phones. See “Pairing” later in this section.

⚠ Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

⚠ Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable mobile phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system is used to control the system. The system can be used while in ignition position 1 or 2. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *183*. Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system.

There may be restrictions on using Bluetooth wireless technology in some locations.

Due to the variety of Bluetooth devices and their firmware versions, the device may respond differently when performing over Bluetooth.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing Information

- A Bluetooth phone with MP3 capability cannot be paired to the vehicle as a phone and an MP3 player via USB port at the same time.
- Up to 10 mobile phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the mobile phone changes or the mobile phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired mobile phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired mobile phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the first available paired mobile phone in the order that they were first paired.

When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone book is downloaded automatically. This is

dependent on the type of phone paired. If the automatic download does not occur, proceed with the phone book download on the phone.

Pairing a Phone – SSP and No Paired Device

When there is no paired device on the infotainment system and Simple Secure Pairing (SSP) is supported:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch PHONE or press ☎ on the steering wheel.
3. Touch Search Device.
4. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
5. Touch Yes on the pop-up screen of the Bluetooth device and infotainment system.
6. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone functions are displayed on the infotainment system.

Pairing a Phone – SSP and Paired Device

When a paired device is on the infotainment system and SSP is supported:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch Settings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the desired device to pair. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen. If no desired device is available go to Step 5.
5. Touch Search Device to search for the desired device.
6. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
7. Touch Yes on the pop-up screen of the Bluetooth device and infotainment system.

- The connected phone is highlighted by ✆.
- ♪ / ✆ indicates the hands-free and phone music functions are enabled.
- ✆ indicates only the hands-free function is enabled.
- ♪ indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.

Pairing a Phone – No SSP and No Paired Device

When there is no paired device on the infotainment system and SSP is not supported:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch PHONE or press ☎ on the steering wheel.
3. Touch Search Device.
4. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
5. Input the Personal Identification Number (PIN) code (default: 1234) to the

Bluetooth device. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone functions are displayed on the infotainment system.

If the connection fails, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.

If a Bluetooth device was previously connected, the infotainment system executes the auto connection. However, if the Bluetooth setting on the Bluetooth device is turned off, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.

Pairing a Phone – No SSP and Paired Device

When a paired device is on the infotainment system and SSP is not supported:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch Settings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the desired device to pair. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen. If no desired device is available go to Step 5.
5. Touch Search Device to search for the desired device.
6. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
7. Input the Personal Identification Number (PIN) code (default: 1234) to the Bluetooth device. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen.

- ♪ / ✆ indicates the hands-free and phone music functions are enabled.
- ✆ indicates only the hands-free function is enabled.
- ♪ indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.

Connecting a Paired Bluetooth Device

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch Settings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the device to be connected.

Checking the Bluetooth Connection

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch Settings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. The paired device will show highlighted.

Disconnecting a Bluetooth Device

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch Settings.

3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the name of the device to be disconnected.
5. Touch Disconnect.

Deleting a Bluetooth Device

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch Settings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the device to delete.
5. Touch 🗑
6. Touch Delete.

Note

If the device to be deleted is connected, the disconnecting procedure needs to be performed previously to the deleting procedure.

Bluetooth Music

Before playing Bluetooth music, read the following information:

- A mobile phone or Bluetooth device that supports Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) versions over 1.2 must be registered and connected to the vehicle.
- From the mobile phone or Bluetooth device, find the Bluetooth device type to set/connect the item as a stereo headset.
- ♪ will appear on the screen if the stereo headset is successfully connected.
- The sound played by the Bluetooth device is delivered through the infotainment system.
- Bluetooth music can be played only when a Bluetooth device has been connected. To play Bluetooth music, connect the Bluetooth phone to the infotainment system.
- If the Bluetooth device is disconnected while playing phone music, the music is discontinued. The audio streaming function may not be supported in some Bluetooth phones. Only one function can be used at a time between the Bluetooth hands-free or Phone music function. For example, if you convert to Bluetooth hands-free while playing Phone music, the music is discontinued. Playing music from the car is not possible when there are no music files stored in the mobile phone.

Note

Verify the volume of your phone and its music player. If it is too low, you might not be able to hear the Bluetooth music.

Note

Depending on the phone device and/or player used, the music name might not be displayed while playing the music.

Playing Bluetooth Music

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Touch Bluetooth.

Pause

Touch ❚❚ to pause.

Touch ▶ to resume.

Playing the Next Song

Touch ⏭.

Playing the Previous Song

Touch ⏮ within approximately two seconds of playback time to play the previous song.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current Song

Touch ⏮ after approximately two seconds of playback time.

Search

Touch and hold ⏮ or ⏭ to rewind or fast forward.

Playing Music Randomly

Touch ⤮ during playback. Touch again to return to normal play.

This function may not be supported depending on the Bluetooth device.

Do not change the track too quickly when playing Bluetooth music.

Conditions that may occur when playing Bluetooth music:

- It takes time to transmit data from the Bluetooth device to the infotainment system.
- If the mobile phone or Bluetooth device is not in the waiting screen mode, it may not automatically play.
- The infotainment system transmits the order to play from the Bluetooth device in the Bluetooth music play mode. If this is done in a different mode, then the device transmits the order to stop. Depending on the Bluetooth device options, this order to play/stop may take time to activate.
- If the Bluetooth music playback is not functioning, then check to see if the Bluetooth device is in the waiting screen mode.
- Sounds may be cut off during the Bluetooth music playback.
- The infotainment system outputs the audio from the mobile phone or Bluetooth device as it is transmitted.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

If equipped, Android Auto™ and/or Apple CarPlay™ capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. If available, a PROJECTION icon will appear on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google™ Play store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.

2. Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the compatible phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use the device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.

The PROJECTION icon on the Home Page will change to Android Auto or Apple CarPlay depending on the phone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, press the Android Auto and/or Apple Carplay icon on the Home Page to launch.

For further information about Android Auto and Apple CarPlay in the vehicle, seek the assistance of your dealer.

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy.

For Android Auto support see https://support.google.com/androidauto or Apple CarPlay support at https://www.apple.com/br/ios/carplay/. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time.

If Android Auto device is connected while another device was paired, the switch devices pop up message will appear as follows:

"Connecting Android Auto, will disconnect Bluetooth Device (Name)."

Note

For using Android Auto function, the date of Infotainment System should be the same as the Android Auto device.

Note

For your safety, some applications are disabled while your vehicle is in motion.

Note

To end Android Auto, disconnect the phone from the USB port or change the USB setting on the phone.

In some cases, it might be necessary to unpair the phone from the radio before plugging the USB cable to start the Android Auto.

Hands-Free Phone

General Information

Vehicles with a Hands-Free Phone system can use a Bluetooth-capable mobile phone with a hands-free profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice control are used to operate the system. Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Hands-Free Phone system.

Hands-Free Phone Controls

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Hands-Free Phone system.

Steering Wheel Controls (if equipped)

Steering wheel controls can be used to:

- Answer incoming calls.

- Confirm system information.
- End a call.
- Decline a call.
- Cancel an operation.
- Make outgoing calls using the call list.

: Press to answer incoming calls.

: Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation.

Making a Call by Entering a Phone Number

- Press , then touch PHONE on the screen.
- Press on the steering wheel.

If a wrong number is entered, touch to delete the number one digit at a time, or touch and hold to delete all digits of the number.

Switching a Call to the Mobile Phone (Private Mode)

To switch the call from the mobile phone to hands-free:

1. Touch .
2. Touch again to switch back to hands-free.

Turning the Microphone On and Off

Touch to turn the microphone on or off.

Calling by Redial

To call by using redial:

- Press on the steering wheel controls to display the redial guidance screen.
- Touch on the phone screen.

Redialling is not possible when there is no call history.

Taking Calls

When a phone call comes through the connected Bluetooth mobile phone, the audio system will be muted or paused and the phone will ring with the relevant information displayed.

Press on the steering wheel controls or touch on the screen.

To decline the call, press on the steering wheel controls or touch on the screen.

Using the Contacts Menu

1. Touch Contacts on the phone screen.
2. Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the list.
3. Touch the phone book entry to call.
4. If there is more than one number associated with the name, touch the number to dial.

Note

When the Bluetooth of your mobile phone and the radio are successfully paired, the phone book is downloaded automatically. But the phone book may not be downloaded automatically according to the type of the phone. In this case, use the phone book on your phone. We recommend that you “Always” accept the Phone book connection request on the initial pairing of the phone.

If there is a connected Bluetooth device previously, the Infotainment system executes the auto connection. But if the Bluetooth setting on your device is turned off, failure message is displayed on the Infotainment system.

Searching for Contacts Entries

1. Touch Contacts on the phone screen.
2. Touch on the contacts screen.
3. Use the keypad to input the name to search. For details, see “Searching for a Name” following.
4. Touch the phone book entry to call.
5. If there is more than one number associated with the name, touch the number to dial.

When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone book will download. Some phones may not download automatically. If this happens, connect it again or proceed with the phone book download on the phone.

Searching for a Name

Select characters by using the keypad on the phone book screen. As characters are selected, the names that include those characters will display on the phone book screen. As more characters of the name are entered, the list of possible names is shortened.

To search for the name Alex:

1. Touch (abc) to select the first character.
2. Touch (jkl) to select the second character.
3. Touch (def) to select the third character.
4. Touch (wxy) to select the fourth character.

Making a Call from Call History

1. Touch Call History on the phone screen.
2. Touch one of the following for:
   - All calls history.
   - Dialled calls.
   - Missed calls.
   - Received calls.
3. Select the contact entry to call.

Making a Call with Speed Dial Numbers

Touch and hold the speed dial number using the keypad on the phone screen.

Only speed dial numbers already stored on the mobile phone can be used for speed dial calls. Up to two-digit speed dial numbers are supported.

For two-digit speed dial numbers, press and hold the second digit to make a call to the speed dial number.

Settings

Various settings for the infotainment system and vehicle can be changed via the Settings menu.

Some settings for different drivers can be memorised individually for each vehicle key.

Press ⌂ and select Settings on the home screen.

Note
Depending on vehicle model and options, some of the functions described below may not be available.

Time and Date

Setting the 12/24 Hour Format

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Time and Date, then select 12h or 24h format.
3. Touch ⮌.

Setting the Month and Day Format

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Time and Date, then Set Date Format.
3. Select DD/MM/YYYY (day/month/year), MM/DD/YYYY (month/day/year), or YYYY/MM/DD (year/month/day) format.
4. Touch ⮌.

Setting the Time and Date

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Time and Date, then Set Time or Set Date.
3. Touch + or − to adjust the value.
4. Touch ▼ or ▲ to adjust AM or PM for 12 hour format.
5. Touch ⮌ to go back to the source screen.

Language

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Language.
3. Select language displayed on the Infotainment system.

Radio

Manage Favourites

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Touch Manage Favourites, then select the number of favourite list on the radio screen.

Audible Touch Feedback

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Turn on or off the Audible Touch Feedback.

Text Scroll

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Turn on or off the Text Scroll.

Tone Settings

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Touch Tone Settings.

4. Select a Preset tone setting or a Custom tone setting and the Fader/Balance:

Preset

- Talk, Rock, Jazz, Pop, Country, Classical, or Custom.

Custom

- Bass, Midrange, or Treble: Touch − or +.

Fader or Balance

- Adjust the front/rear or left/right speakers by dragging the dot in the vehicle image on the screen.

5. Touch ⮌ to go back to the source screen.

Auto Volume

This feature automatically adjusts the radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise.

The level of volume compensation can be selected, or the feature can be turned off.

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Select Auto Volume.
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Touch ⮌ to go back to the source screen.

Maximum Startup Volume

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Touch Maximum Startup Volume, then set between 13 to 37.

Vehicle

Adjusts the vehicle personalisation settings. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *80*.

Bluetooth

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Bluetooth.
3. Touch the desired item:
   - Device Information: Check the device information.
   - Device management: Select the desired device and connect/disconnect or delete.
   - Change Pairing PIN: Manually change/set the PIN code.
   - Ringtones: Change the ringtone.
   - Sort Order: Change the sorting order of contacts. (First/Last or Last/First)
   - Voice Mail Numbers: Change the voice mail number.

Apple CarPlay

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Apple CarPlay.
3. Select on or off.

Android Auto

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Android Auto.
3. Select on or off.

Note

Even though you set the Projection feature "Off", connecting the device and pressing the projection feature on home screen will display pop up message as following: "While active, New device will be displayed on this screen".

USB Auto Launch

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch USB Auto Launch.
3. Select on or off.
   - On: If you connect the device through USB port, it will be launched automatically.
   - Off: If you connect the device through USB port, it will not be launched automatically.

Turn display Off

Turns the infotainment display off. Touch the display to turn it back on.

Rear Camera

The Rear Camera menu is available in vehicles which have a Rear Vision Camera (RVC) option.

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Rear Camera.
   - Guidance Lines: Select the Guidance Lines feature to turn on or off.
   - Rear Park Assist Symbols: Select the Rear Park Assist Symbols feature to turn on or off.

Return to Factory Settings

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Return to Factory Settings.
   - Restore Vehicle Settings: Restore all vehicle settings.
   - Clear All Private Data: Clear all private data from the system.
   - Restore Radio Settings: Restore all radio settings.

Software Information

1. Press ⌂, then touch Settings.
2. Touch Software Information.
   - Open Source: Displays the software licensing information.
   - Software Update: Select to update the system. Refer to your dealer.

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

DivX Certified® to play DivX® video, including premium content.

Covered by one or more of the following U.S. patents: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 7,519,274.

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under license.

"Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPod and iPhone are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Android Auto is a trademark of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Air Conditioning System 170
Electronic Climate Control System 172
Rear Air Conditioning System 174

Air Vents
Adjustable Air Vents 175
Fixed Air Vents 176

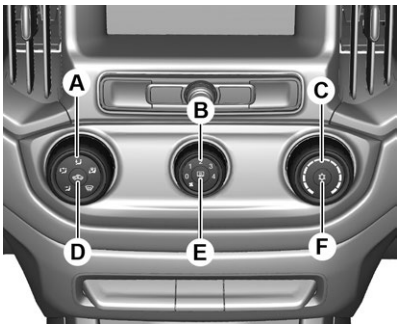
Maintenance
Air Intake 177
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 177
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 177

Climate Control Systems

Air Conditioning System

⚠ Warning

Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in oxygen content and/or body temperature.



Controls for:

- Air distribution (A)
- Fan speed (B)
- Temperature (C)
- Air recirculation (D)
- Heated rear window (E)
- Air conditioning (F)

Temperature

Adjust the temperature by turning the knob (C).

Blue : Cold

Red : Warm

Air Distribution

Select air outlet by turning the knob (A).

: To head area via adjustable air vents

: To head area and foot well

: To foot well

: To windscreen and foot well

: Demisting and defrosting

Fan Speed

Adjust the air flow by turning the knob (B) to the desired speed.

Heated Rear Window

Operated by pressing the button (E), see *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *21*.

Air Recirculation System

The air recirculation mode is operated with the button (D).

Use recirculation system whenever you need to cool down the air faster and for maximum cooling. Use it also whenever driving on dusty or smelly roads, to reduce particles and odours to penetrate the passenger compartment.

⚠ Warning

Driving in recirculation mode for a prolonged period of time can make you sleepy. Periodically turn to the outside air mode for fresh air.

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates and may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

Air conditioning

Press button (F). Air conditioning is functional only when the engine and fan are running.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is a little above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch the air conditioning system off to save fuel.

The air conditioning will not operate when the fan control knob (B) is in the 0 position.

Even though the air conditioning is turned on (F), the vehicle will produce warm air if the temperature knob is set in the red area.

To turn off the air conditioning system, press the button (F) again or turn the fan knob (B) to 0.

⚠ Warning

It is recommended to service the climate control systems by a Holden Dealership Network or Authorised Repair Shop. Improper service methods may cause personal injury.

Normal Cooling

- Operate the air conditioning system (F).

- Turn the temperature control knob (C) to the blue area for cooling.
- Turn the air distribution knob (A) to the desired position.
- Adjust the fan control knob (B) to the desired speed.

Maximum Cooling

Briefly open the windows so that the hot air can disperse quickly.

- Switch on air conditioning ❄ (F).
- Press button (D) to activate air recirculation.
- Turn the air distribution knob (A) to position .
- Set temperature control knob (C) to the coldest level.
- Set fan speed knob (B) to the highest level.
- Open all the vents.

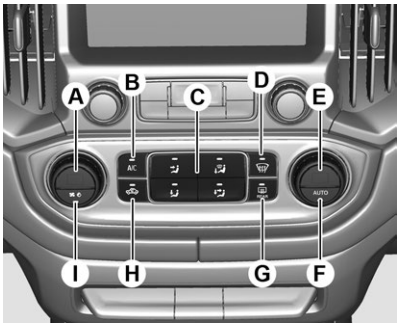
Indication of Settings

The selected functions are indicated by the LED of the activated button.

Electronic Climate Control System

⚠ Warning

Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in oxygen content and/or body temperature.



Controls for:

- Fan speed (A).
- Air conditioning (B).
- Air distribution (C).
- Demisting and defrosting (D).
- Temperature (E).
- Heated rear window (G).
- Air recirculation (H).

AUTO : Automatic mode, all settings except temperature are chosen automatically by the system (F).

/ ⏻ : System ON/OFF (I).

Temperature

Set temperature to the desired value by turning the knob (E).

Blue : Cold.

Red : Warm.

If the minimum temperature is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling.

Heating

- Turn the temperature control knob (E) to the red area for heating.
- Select the air distribution (C) to the desired position.

- Turn the fan control knob (A) to the desired speed.

Maximum Heating

Use the maximum heating mode for quick heating.

- Turn the temperature control knob (E) all the way to the red area for heating.
- Turn the fan control knob (A) to maximum speed.

Air Distribution

Press the respective button for desired adjustment, the setting of air distribution is indicated on the Info-Display.

: To windscreen and foot well.

: To foot well.

: To head area via adjustable air vents.

: To head area via adjustable air vents and foot well.

Fan Speed

Adjust the air flow by turning the fan knob (A) to the desired speed.

Demisting and Defrosting the Windows

- Press button (D).
- Recirculation will switch to fresh air.
- Air distribution and fresh air are set automatically.

The air conditioning will be automatically switched on.

Switch on heated rear window (G).

See *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *21*.

Air Recirculation System

The air recirculation mode is operated with the (H) button. When activated, external air inlet is closed and internal air is recirculated within the cabin.

To speed up the cool down and reach the desired temperature faster, if not in the **AUTO** mode, the air recirculation function is recommended.

⚠ Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

Air conditioning

Activate or deactivate with the **A/C** (B) button. The air conditioning is only functional when the engine and Climate Control System are running.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

Even though the air conditioning is turned on, the vehicle will produce warm air if the temperature knob is set in the red area.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch the cooling system off to save fuel.

Automatic Mode AUTO

Basic setting for maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO** button, the air conditioning is activated automatically.
- Open all air vents.
- Set preselected temperature turning knob (E).

All air vents are actuated automatically in automatic mode. The air vents should therefore always be open.

The following functions can be adapted manually, however, the system will no longer function in automatic mode.

- Fan speed (A).
- Air conditioning (B).
- Air distribution (C).
- Demisting and defrosting (D).
- Air recirculation (H).
- Power ⏻ (I).

The preselected temperature is automatically regulated. In the automatic mode, the fan speed and air distribution automatically regulate the air flow.

The system can be manually adapted by the use of air distribution and fan speed controls.

Each change of settings is indicated in the Info-Display.

Activated functions are also indicated by the LED in the button in some cases.

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Do not cover the sensor on the instrument panel for correct operation.

Manual Settings

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the buttons and turning the rotary knobs. Changing a setting can deactivate the automatic mode.

To return to automatic mode, press **AUTO** button (F).

Rear Air Conditioning System

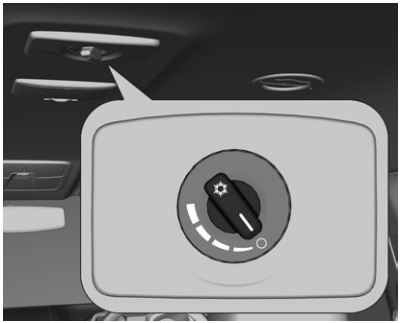
The rear air conditioning system operates in conjunction with the front air conditioning system.

When activated, cold air will flow to the rear passenger compartment via the overhead air vents and the front air conditioning system will switch to manual mode.

Operation

1. Turn the air conditioning system on.

2. Press the **REAR A/C** button.

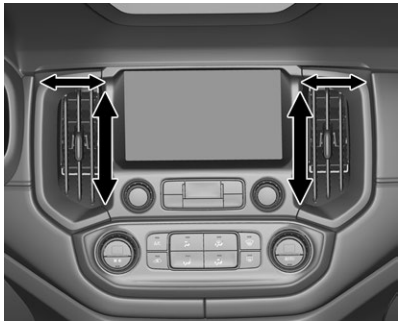


3. Rotate the rear fan speed switch to the desired position:
   - Rotate anticlockwise to decrease air flow.
   - Rotate clockwise to increase air flow.

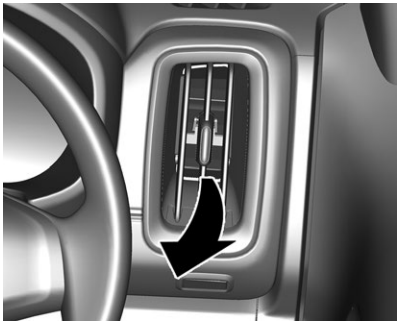
Air Vents

Adjustable Air Vents

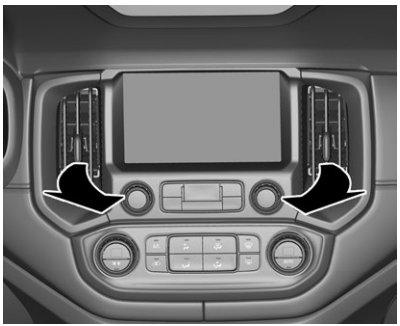
At least one air vent must be open while cooling is on in order to prevent the evaporator from icing up due to lack of air movement.



Push the adjuster knob up to open and down to close the vent or to adjust the volume of air.



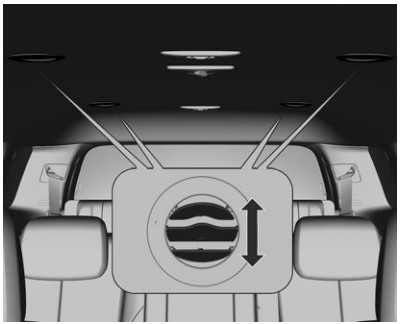
Direct the air flow by tilting and swivelling the adjuster knob.



⚠ Warning

Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Rear Air Vents



Additional air conditioning is supplied to the rear passenger compartment via the overhead air vents.

Pull the adjuster knob up to open and down to close the vent or to adjust the volume of air.

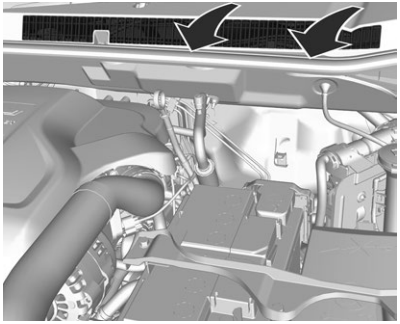
Direct the air flow by swivelling and turning the adjuster knobs.

Fixed Air Vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen, door windows and in the foot wells.

Maintenance

Air Intake



Outside air is drawn into the vehicle through the opening between the bonnet and the windscreen.

Keep the area clear of debris.

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The filter removes contaminants such as pollen and dust from the air entering the vehicle.

Maintenance of the pollen filter is required. Refer to the Service/ Warranty Booklet.

Air Conditioning Regular Operation

To ensure efficient performance, switch the air conditioning system on for a few minutes once a month, even in winter.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Driving Environment 179
Steering 179
Off-Road Driving 180
Hill and Mountain Roads 181

Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Break-In 181
Ignition Positions 181
Starting the Engine 183
Starting the Diesel Engine 184
Parking 184

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 185

Diesel Particulate Filter
Diesel Particulate Filter 186

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 187
Transmission Display 187
Shift Lever 188
Manual Mode 189
Electronic Driving Programs 189
Fault 189
Interruption of Power Supply 189

Drive Systems
Four-Wheel Drive 190

Brakes
Brakes 194
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 194
Parking Brake 195
Brake Assist 195
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 195

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control System (TCS) 196
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 197
Descent Control System (DCS) 197

Cruise Control
Cruise Control 199

Object Detection Systems
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 201
Parking Assist 203
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 207
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) . . . 209
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 210

Fuel
Fuel for Diesel Engines 212
Biodiesel 213
Filling the Tank 213

Trailer Towing
Trailer Towing 215
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . 219

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 219

Driving Information

Driving Environment

Before entering the vehicle

Check that windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.

Visually check tyre inflation. Check tyre pressures weekly.

Before driving off

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.
3. Adjust rear view mirrors.
4. Fasten seat belts.
5. Check that warning indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on. See *Instrument Panel Overview* ⇨ *56*.

Brakes

- Do not let the vehicle run down hills or coast with the engine off, as the power assistance does not operate.
- Ensure that there are no obstructions that could limit brake pedal use.
- Continuous or heavy use of brakes will shorten the life of the brake pads.
- See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ *194*.

Loose Articles

Do not leave loose articles or luggage in the passenger compartment. Secure in the rear load area.

⚠ Warning

Portable gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion.

As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders.

They must be restrained from rolling around and, when possible, placed in the cargo area of the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is recommended that if gas cylinders are frequently transported that a purpose-built carrying compartment be used.

Ensure any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

Steering

Electric Power Steering

The vehicle has electric power steering. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If the assistance is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel and is held against that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

If the power steering is used for an extended period of time, the assistance may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See specific vehicle steering messages under *Steering System Messages* ⇨ *78*. See your dealer if there is a problem.

Off-Road Driving

Before driving off-road:

- Check the fuel level. See *Fuel Gauge* ⇨ *63*.
- Check spare tyre pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *281*.
- Check fluid levels. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *226*.

While driving off-road:

- Be alert to unexpected restrictions.
- Be aware of uncommon noises from the tyres and the engine.
- Always drive at a speed at which you are able to maintain control of the vehicle.

Caution
When driving off-road, sudden motion and manoeuvres can make you lose control of the steering. This could cause a collision. Therefore, when driving on-road and off-road, you and your passengers should wear seat belts.

After driving off-road:

- Remove any debris from under the vehicle or bonnet. It may become a fire hazard.
- After driving through mud or sand, clean and check the brake linings.
- Check the body frame, steering, suspension, wheels, tyres, exhaust system, fuel lines and cooling system.

Note
Regular off-road driving requires more frequent maintenance.

Water Crossing

Before crossing water:

- Switch off the air-conditioning.
- Do not attempt to drive through water more than 600 mm deep.
- Never drive into fast-running water. The force of the water can easily move the vehicle sideways, possibly into deeper water.
- Drive very slowly through deep water. Driving too fast may cause water to enter the engine and cause major damage.
- Immediately after driving through deep water, drive slowly and check the brake pedal force.

If the brakes are wet, press firmly several times to dry them out quickly.

- If the vehicle is stationary in deep water for an extended time, water may have entered the engine, transmission, differentials and wheel bearings. Contact a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

Hill and Mountain Roads

If the vehicle is driven frequently over hilly terrain, it must be maintained in good condition. The fluids, tyres and brake pads must be checked according to the maintenance schedule shown in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

On a downhill road, avoid unnecessary use of the brakes. The vehicle speed can be slowed by shifting down a gear.

When driving downhill, always keep the engine running and a gear engaged. Do not drive with the engine turned off or by shifting into neutral gear.

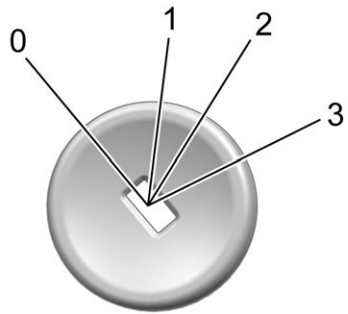
Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

Use the following precautions to improve performance:

- Do not make full throttle starts.
- Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid hard stops except in emergencies. This will allow your brakes to bed in properly.
- Avoid hard stops except in emergencies to avoid premature wear and the need for early replacement of brakes.
- Avoid heavy acceleration and prolonged high-speed driving to avoid damage to the engine and to conserve fuel.
- Do not tow any other vehicle.

Ignition Positions

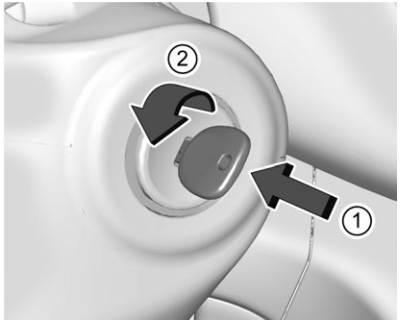


0. Stopping the Engine/LOCK/OFF
1. ACC/ACCESSORY
2. ON/RUN
3. START

The ignition switch has four positions.

To shift out of P (Park), the ignition must be ON/RUN and the brake pedal must be applied.

0 (Stopping the Engine/LOCK/OFF) : This position turns off the vehicle. It also locks the ignition, the transmission, and the steering column, if equipped with a locking steering column.



To turn off the vehicle:

1. Make sure that the vehicle is stopped.
2. Shift to P (Park).
3. Continue to hold the brake pedal, then set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake* ⇨ *195*.
4. Push the key all the way in toward the steering column, then turn the key to LOCK/OFF.
5. Remove the key.
6. Release the brake pedal.

See your dealer if the key can be removed in any other position.

A warning chime will sound when the driver door is opened and the key is in the ignition.

If equipped with a locking steering column, the steering can bind with the front wheels turned off centre, which may prevent key rotation out of LOCK/OFF. If this happens, move the steering wheel from right to left while turning the key to ACC/ACCESSORY. If this does not work, then the vehicle needs service.

⚠ Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

systems and disable the airbags. While driving, turn off the vehicle only in an emergency.

In an emergency, if the vehicle cannot be pulled over and must be turned off while driving:

1. Push the key all the way in toward the steering column, then turn the key to ACC/ACCESSORY.
2. Brake using firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
3. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. Continue braking and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
4. Come to a complete stop.
5. Shift to P (Park).

6. Continue to hold the brake pedal, then set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake* ⇨ *195*.
7. Push the key all the way in towards the steering column, then turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
8. Remove the key.
9. Release the brake pedal.

Caution
Use the correct key, make sure it is all the way in — or pushed all the way in toward the steering column when turning off the vehicle — and turn it only with your hand.

1 (ACC/ACCESSORY) : This position allows features such as the infotainment system to operate while the vehicle is off. It also unlocks the steering column, if equipped with a locking steering column. Use this position if the vehicle must be pushed or towed. From ON/RUN, push the key all the way in toward the steering column, then turn the key to ACC/ACCESSORY.

If the key is left in ACC/ ACCESSORY with the engine off, the battery could drain and the vehicle may not start.

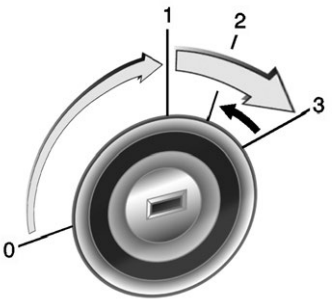
A warning chime will sound when the driver door is opened and the key is in the ignition.

2 (ON/RUN) : This position can be used to operate the electrical accessories and to display some instrument cluster warning and indicator lights. This position can also be used for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. The switch stays in this position when the engine is running. The transmission is also unlocked in this position.

If the key is left in ON/RUN with the engine off, the battery could drain and the vehicle may not start.

3 (START) : This is the position that starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition returns to ON/RUN for driving.

Starting the Engine



1. Apply the park brake.
2. Turn the key to position 1 while moving the steering wheel slightly to release the lock.

   Move the shift lever to **P** or **N**.

   Do not accelerate.
3. Turn the ignition key to position 2 until ⟒ extinguishes.

4. Turn the key to position 3 and release when the engine is running.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The power outlets may be used after the engine is turned off.

Note

The power outlets will continue to operate for up to 10 minutes or until a door is opened.

See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *61*.

Starting the Diesel Engine

Observe the following precautions to ensure maximum turbocharger service life.

- After starting the engine, let it idle for approximately 1 to 2 minutes (avoid acceleration or driving the vehicle).
- Do not stop the engine immediately after high-load driving (such as high-speed driving or driving up steep gradients). Let the engine idle for approximately 1 to 2 minutes to cool it down.
- After changing the engine oil and oil filter, start the engine and let it idle for about 1 to 2 minutes (avoid acceleration or driving the vehicle).
- Operate the engine above idle speed only after normal engine oil pressure has been established. Forcing the turbocharger to operate before the bearings are adequately lubricated creates unnecessary friction.
- Use only the specified engine oil and observe the inspection and replacement intervals.
- At low outside temperatures or when the vehicle has not been used for a long period, normal engine oil pressure and flow is affected.

  Under these conditions, the engine should be started and allowed to idle for a few minutes before operating at higher rpms.

Parking

1. Apply the parking brake firmly without engaging the release button.
2. Move the shift lever to **P** (Park).

   On an uphill gradient turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

   On a downhill gradient turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
3. Close all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off to lock the steering wheel.
5. Remove the key.
6. Press on the key to lock all doors. See *Keys* ⇨ *7*.

⚠ Warning

To avoid the possibility of injury, always apply the parking brake firmly before exiting the vehicle.

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate this vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with the hot exhaust system.

Never leave the engine running in an area such as a closed garage or underground car park.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ Danger

EXHAUST WARNING – CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING

Exhaust gases can contain carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas, which can cause unconsciousness and even death to both humans and animals.

Gases could be inhaled if the exhaust system on your vehicle is faulty.

To protect against exhaust gases entering the vehicle, the exhaust system and body should be inspected:

- Each time the vehicle is serviced.
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or rear of the vehicle is damaged.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer if you think the vehicle needs inspecting for any of the above reasons.

Do not sit (or leave children or pets) in a parked vehicle for any extended period of time with the engine running. Turn the fan on using any setting that brings outside air into the vehicle. Do not run the engine in an enclosed area (such as the garage) any longer than is needed to move the vehicle.

Diesel Particulate Filter

The vehicle has a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) as part of the exhaust system to reduce vehicle emissions.

The diesel particulate filter system collects particulates from the exhaust gases to minimise discharge of soot to the atmosphere.

To prevent clogging of the filter, the soot particles are burnt off at regular intervals through a self cleaning process where additional fuel is injected into the engine cylinders to increase the particulate filter temperature to approximately 600°C.

Several factors including fuel consumed, hours of engine operation, and distance travelled are monitored by the Engine Control Module (ECM). The self-cleaning occurs approximately once per tank of fuel.

This allows deposited soot to be oxidised or burnt off and converted to carbon dioxide (CO_2).

This process usually takes between 10 and 15 minutes but may take up to 30 minutes depending on driving conditions.

Increased engine speed at idle and emissions of odours and smoke are considered to be normal conditions during the self cleaning process. Fuel consumption may also be higher during this period.

Under certain driving conditions, such as short trips, prolonged idle, stop-start traffic or downhill driving, the filter cannot clean itself.
A message is displayed when the DPF is dirty and needs to perform a self cleaning. See *Diesel Particulate Filter Messages* ⇨ *76*.

For the filter to clean itself, the vehicle must be continuously driven until the message extinguishes. This can take up to 30 minutes.

The message extinguishes as soon as the self-cleaning operation is complete. Turning the engine off while the message is displayed will prevent the cleaning process from completing. This will result in increased fuel consumption, increased engine oil level due to dilution, and a reduction in engine oil life.

You will also notice a change in the exhaust sound and engine idle speed. This is normal.

If you continue to drive with the DPF warning message displayed and the exhaust filter is not cleaned as required, the SVS (Service Vehicle Soon) message will be displayed, since the self-cleaning process is not feasible and a dealer service is necessary.

If the diesel particulate filter is not cleaned soon, the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Lamp) will illuminate, an 'Engine Power is Reduced' message will be displayed and a dealer service will be necessary. See *Diesel Particulate Filter Messages* ⇨ *76*, *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *74*, *Engine Power Messages* ⇨ *76*, *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ *66*.

Caution

Permanent damage can occur to the DPF or related components if the required Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (10 ppm sulfur maximum) or the recommended engine oil is not used. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

⚠ Warning

During DPF self cleaning or during extended idling, the exhaust system and exhaust gases are very hot. Combustible material could contact hot exhaust components under the vehicle and ignite. You or others could be burnt. Do not park or idle for an extended period of time near or over paper, leaves, dry grass, or other combustible

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

materials. Keep the exhaust area clear of material that could ignite or burn.

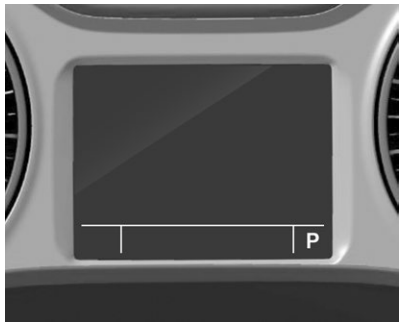
Caution

Extended idle should be avoided as the DPF system will not self clean. During extended idle operation, monitor the DIC for messages and take appropriate action. Continued idling with the warning message displayed may cause irreversible damage to the DPF.

Automatic Transmission

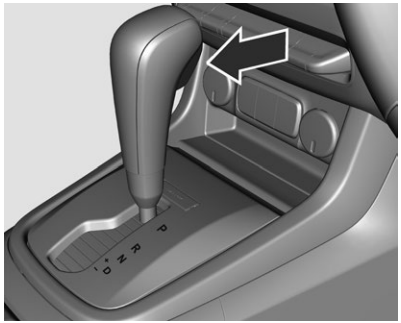
The automatic transmission permits manual gear shifting (manual mode) or automatic gear shifting (automatic mode) of the gears.

Transmission Display



The mode or selected gear is shown in the central display of the instrument panel.

Shift Lever



P: (park) In park position, the wheels are locked. Select **P** only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied.

R: (reverse) Place in reverse only when the vehicle is stationary.

N: (neutral)

D: (drive) Used for general driving. Allows the transmission to be shifted into any of the six forward gears.

+-: (manual) See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *189*.

Note

- The selector lever is locked in position **P**. To move, switch the ignition on, apply the brake pedal and push the release button.
- To engage **P** or **R**, push the release button.
- To start the engine, press the brake pedal while in either **P** or **N**.
- Do not accelerate while engaging a gear.
- Never press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.
- When a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Engine Braking

For engine braking, select a lower gear when driving downhill.

⚠ Warning

Do not shift down by two or more gear positions at one time.

Grade Braking

Grade braking assists in maintaining desired vehicle speeds when driving on downhill gradients by using the engine and transmission to slow the vehicle.

The first time the feature activates for each ignition cycle, a DIC message will be displayed. See *Transmission Messages* ⇨ *79*.

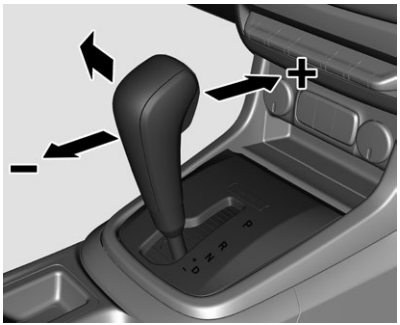
Parking

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Select position **P**.
3. Apply the parking brake firmly without engaging the release button.
4. Remove the ignition key.

Note

The ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

Manual Mode



Move the selector lever out of position **D** towards the left and then forwards or backwards as desired.

+ : Upshift

- : Downshift

If a higher gear is selected when the vehicle speed is too low or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed.

If the engine speed is too low, the transmission automatically shifts to a lower gear.

No automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine speed.

Electronic Driving Programs

Kickdown

If the accelerator pedal is pressed to the floor while in automatic mode, the transmission shifts to a lower gear, depending on the engine speed.

Fault

In the event of a fault, illuminates. The transmission no longer shifts automatically or manually because it is locked in a certain gear.

Contact a Holden Dealer.

Interruption of Power Supply

If the power supply is interrupted, the selector lever cannot be moved out of position **P** and the ignition key cannot be removed.

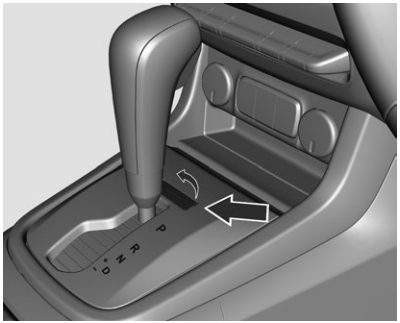
If the battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *261*.

If the battery is not the cause of the fault, release the selector lever and remove the ignition key from the ignition switch/lock.

Release Selector Lever

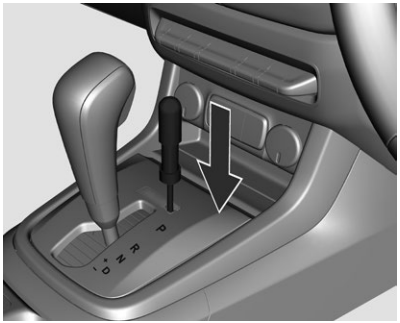
To shift out of **P**:

1. Apply the brake pedal.



2. Open the cover.

Note
Use a small screwdriver to prise the cover off at both ends.



3. Insert a screwdriver into the slot until the selector lever is unlocked.
4. Move the selector lever to position **N**.
5. Remove the screwdriver.
6. Close the cover.
7. Have the vehicle repaired by a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

Drive Systems

Four-Wheel Drive

The vehicle has a four-wheel drive system that allows engine driving power to be sent to all four wheels for additional traction.

To get the best performance out of four-wheel drive, you must be familiar with its operation. Use two-wheel drive high for most normal driving conditions.

Note

- Driving on clean, dry pavement in four-wheel drive for an extended period of time can cause premature wear on the vehicle drivetrain.
- Do not engage four-wheel drive if wheels of different sizes are fitted, as damage to the vehicle can result. The repair would not be covered by warranty.
- Incorrect usage of the four-wheel drive may damage the system. Use four-wheel drive only on tracks with low adherence, dirt

roads, grass, pastures, mud, sand or whenever additional traction is required.

The transfer shift control switch is located on the centre console, to the side of the parking brake lever.

Indicator lights in the switch indicate the currently selected setting. The indicator lights illuminate briefly when the ignition is turned on. If the lights do not illuminate, take the vehicle to your dealer.

Rotate the transfer shift control switch to change the setting.

An indicator light will flash while the transfer is shifting. The light continues to flash until all shifting criteria has been met and the new setting has been engaged. Once the new setting is fully active, the indicator light for the new setting will remain on constantly.

If the transfer does not shift, the system will return to the last chosen setting.

The following settings are available:

2↑ (Two-Wheel High) : For normal driving in most street and highway situations. The front axle is not engaged in two-wheel drive.

N (Neutral) : Shift the transfer to N (Neutral) only when towing the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). You or someone else

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

could be seriously injured. Be sure to set the parking brake before placing the transfer case in N (Neutral). See *Parking* ⇨ *184*

4↑ (Four-Wheel High) : Engages the front axle to help drive the vehicle. Use four-wheel high when you need additional traction, such as on snowy or icy roads, or in most off road situations.

4↓ (Four-Wheel Low) : Also engages the front axle to give you extra traction. It sends the maximum power to all four wheels.

You might choose four-wheel low if you were driving off-road in sand, mud, or deep snow and while climbing or descending steep hills. Shifting into four-wheel low will turn the traction control and stability control systems off, see *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ *196*.

Note

Continuous driving in 4↑ or 4↓ on high adherence tracks (dry compacted dirt or paved roads), mainly on turns or sudden manoeuvres, is not recommended, as it will cause premature wear of drivetrain components as well as increased fuel consumption. It is always recommended to disable 4↑ or 4↓ after its intended usage.

Shifting from Two-Wheel High to Four-Wheel High (2↑ to 4↑)

Rotate the transfer shift control switch from two-wheel high **2** ↑ to the four-wheel high **4** ↑ setting. This can be done at any speed below 120 km/h.

Shifting from Four-Wheel High to Two-Wheel High (4↑ to 2↑)

Rotate the transfer shift control switch to the two-wheel high **2** ↑ position. This can be done at any speed. It is normal to hear and feel the transfer shift out of four-wheel high **4** ↑.

Shifting from Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High to Four-Wheel Low (2↑ or 4↑ to 4↓)

To shift from Two-Wheel High **2** ↑ or four-wheel high **4** ↑ to four-wheel low **4** ↓, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h with the transmission in N (Neutral).

The preferred method for shifting into four-wheel low **4** ↓ is to have your vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h. Rotate the transfer shift control switch to the four-wheel low **4** ↓ setting. You must wait for the four-wheel low 4↓ indicator light to stop flashing and remain on before shifting the transmission into gear. If four-wheel low setting is selected when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving faster than 5 km/h, the four-wheel low indicator light will flash for 30 seconds but will not complete the shift and the light will go back to the original setting.

Shifting from Four-Wheel Low to Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High (4↓ to 2↑ or 4↑)

To shift from four-wheel low **4** ↓ to two-wheel high **2** ↑ or four-wheel high **4** ↑, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h with the transmission in N (Neutral). The preferred method for shifting out of four-wheel low **4** ↓ is to have your vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h. Rotate the transfer shift control switch to the two-wheel high **2** ↑ or four-wheel high **4** ↑ position. You must wait for the two-wheel high or four-wheel high indicator light to stop flashing and stay on before shifting the transmission into gear. If two-wheel high or four-wheel high setting is selected when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving faster than 5 km/h, the two-wheel high or four-wheel high indicator light will

flash for 30 seconds but will not complete the shift and the light will go back to the original setting.

Shifting to Neutral (2↑, 4↑ or 4↓ to Neutral)

Use N (Neutral) when you plan to tow the vehicle. See *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *263* for towing instructions. The vehicle must be stopped. To shift the transfer into N (Neutral), do the following:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Press the brake pedal and shift the transmission in N (Neutral).
4. Shift the transfer to two-wheel high **2** ↑.
5. Rotate the transfer shift control switch clockwise past four-wheel low **4** ↓ to N (Neutral). Hold the switch in the N (Neutral) setting for at least 20 seconds or wait until the red Neutral indicator light stops flashing and stays on. The N (Neutral) red indicator light will come on when the transfer shift to N (Neutral) is complete.

Note

Upon releasing the transfer shift control switch from the Neutral **(N)** setting, the switch will rotate to the four-wheel low (**4** ↓) setting. The transfer will remain in neutral with the red Neutral **(N)** indicator light illuminated until a new setting is selected.

6. Press and hold the brake pedal and shift the transmission to **R** (Reverse) for 1 second, then shift the transmission to **D** (Drive) for 1 second. If the transfer is not in **N** (Neutral), repeat this procedure starting at Step 3.
7. Turn the engine off by turning the ignition key to ACC/ Accessory.
8. Place the transmission shift lever in **P** (Park).
9. Turn the ignition to Lock/Off.

This **N** (Neutral) setting is a four-wheel drive neutral, meaning that the front and rear outputs of the transfer are disengaged. With a disengaged transfer, there is no power flow through either axle, thus allowing towing without the driveline binding.

Shifting Out of Neutral

After towing the vehicle, shift out of **N** (Neutral) in order to drive. To shift out of **N** (Neutral), do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Start the vehicle or keep the engine off and turn the key to the ON position.
3. Apply the brake pedal and shift the transmission to **N** (Neutral).
4. Rotate the transfer shift control switch from the four-wheel low **4** ↓ setting to the desired setting.

Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If one brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still brake using the other brake circuit. However, the braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is pressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Contact a Holden Dealer.

When the engine is not running, such as when the vehicle is being towed and the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice, braking requires greater force.

Caution

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will accelerate wear of the brake components and cause the brakes to become overheated.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

ABS:

- Continuously monitors the vehicle's braking system, preventing the wheels from locking.
- Allows maximum braking effort while full steering control is retained, even in the event of panic braking.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. You should always adjust the vehicle's speed to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Operation

ABS operation is noticeable by pulsing of the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

The initial self-check may also be audible.

Keep the brake pedal fully pressed throughout the braking process, without pumping it. Pumping the brake pedal can reduce brake efficiency.

If the vehicle is travelling above 50 km/h and ABS braking occurs, the centrally mounted rear high-level brake lamp will flash.

⚠ Warning

When the ignition is turned on, the (ABS) warning light briefly illuminates. The self-check of the ABS may be audible.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

If the (ABS) warning light (ABS off) on the instrument panel display does not extinguish, or illuminates when driving, a malfunction has occurred.

Note: The vehicle's brake system remains operational, but without ABS assistance. Have a Holden Dealer check the system as soon as possible.

See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *67*.

Parking Brake

Applying the parking brake:

1. Apply the parking brake firmly without engaging the release button and apply as firmly as possible when on an uphill or downhill gradient.

Releasing the parking brake:

1. Pull the lever slightly upwards.
2. Press the release button and lower the lever all the way down.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, press the foot brake at the same time.

⚠ Warning

Never drive the vehicle with the parking brake applied.

See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *67*.

Brake Assist

Brake Assist detects rapid brake pedal operations due to emergency braking situations and provides additional braking to activate the Antilock Brake System (ABS) if the brake pedal is not pushed hard enough to activate ABS normally. Minor noise, brake pedal pulsation, and/or pedal movement during this time may occur. Continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. Brake Assist disengages when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

The HSA system assists in preventing rollback when driving off, while on an incline.

1. Release the brake pedal.
2. Press the accelerator pedal.

   The brakes remain on for approximately 2 seconds.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)

TCS improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the driving wheels from spinning.

As soon as the driving wheels start to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

TCS is operational:

- On the rear wheels when in two-wheel drive
- On all four wheels when in four-wheel high

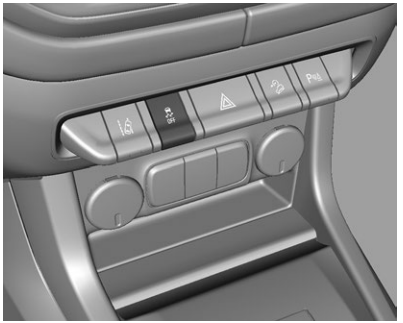
TCS is automatically turned off when four-wheel low is selected. A message is displayed in the DIC and the TCS Off light OFF will illuminate.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Operation

The OFF switch is located in front of the shift lever.



In certain circumstances, it may be helpful to deactivate the TCS.

- Deactivate by pressing OFF for approximately 2 seconds.

  Traction Control Off is displayed on the DIC.
- TCS is reactivated by pressing OFF again, for approximately 2 seconds.

  Traction Control On is displayed on the DIC.
- When active flashes.

- TCS is also reactivated the next time the ignition is turned on.
- See *Ride Control System Messages* ⇨ *77*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

ESC:

- Improves driving stability in any driving situation.
- Assists in maintaining vehicle stability when the vehicle's grip level is exceeded such as a sudden lane change, slippery or unexpected road conditions.
- Alters engine power and/or braking on specific wheels, improving the vehicle's steering control and power delivery, on wet or slippery roads, particularly on snow and ice.

ESC is automatically turned off when four-wheel low is selected. A message is displayed in the DIC and the ESC Off light will illuminate.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Operation

The switch is located in front of the shift lever.

In certain circumstances, it may be helpful to deactivate ESC.

- Deactivate by pressing for approximately 7 seconds.

  illuminates and ESC Off is displayed on the DIC.
- ESC is reactivated by pressing again for approximately 2 seconds.

  Both TCS and ESC are reactivated and extinguishes.
- ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is turned on.

When ESC is active illuminates.

See *Ride Control System Messages* ⇨ *77*.

Descent Control System (DCS)

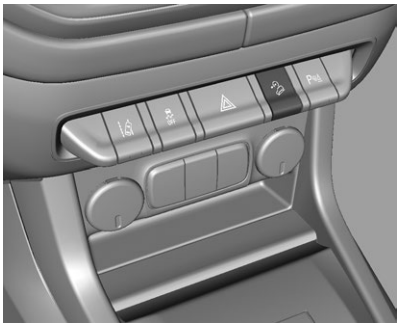
- DCS allows the vehicle to travel on a steep downhill slope at speeds between approximately 4 km/h and 30 km/h without pressing the brake pedal.

- When the system is activated, while the vehicle is moving at speeds between approximately 4 km/h and 30 km/h it will maintain the desired descent speed when the vehicle is on a steep gradient.
- The desired descent speed within the active range can be varied by using the accelerator or brake pedals to set the speed.
- Noise or vibration from the brake system may be noticeable when the system is in operation.

Caution

Use only when descending steep gradients while driving off-road. Do not use when driving on normal road surfaces. Unnecessary usage of the DCS, such as while driving on normal roads, may damage the brake system and the ESC function.

Activation



While travelling at speeds below 50 km/h:

- Press .

  illuminates green on the instrument panel.

  During operation, flashes.

Note

- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedals while DCS is activated, will adjust the desired descent speed.

  If pressed, DCS operation will stop until the accelerator or brake pedals are released.

  stops flashing.

- If the DCS is activated and the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h, extinguishes and the system remains in standby mode.

  When the vehicle speed drops below approximately 30 km/h, illuminates and DCS is activated.

- When in standby mode and the vehicle speed exceeds 50 km/h, DCS deactivates.
- The message Reduce Speed for Hill Descent Control may display when DCS is activated and vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h.

Deactivation

While travelling at speeds below 50 km/h:

- Press

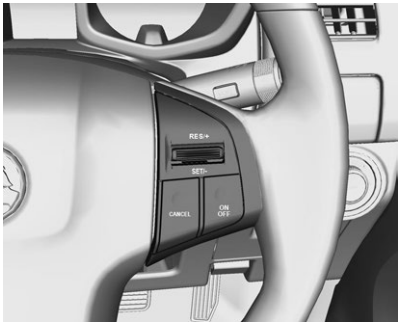
  extinguishes.

System Protection

When operated continuously for prolonged periods of time, temperatures may increase within the brake system:

- DCS may enter a protection mode, gradually releasing the brakes, and temporarily disabling DCS.
- will extinguish.
- Traction Control Off may display on the DIC.
- All other braking functions will continue to operate normally.
- Once the brakes are at normal temperatures, press at speeds below 50 km/h to reactivate the DCS.

Cruise Control



The cruise control:

- Maintains the vehicle's speed without pressure on the accelerator pedal.
- Will only operate at speeds above approximately 20 km/h.
- Controls are located on the steering wheel.
- For safety reasons, cruise control cannot be activated until the foot brake has been operated once.

⚠ Warning

Do not use the cruise control when road or driving conditions require varying speeds.
A consistent speed isn't practical in heavy, varying traffic or on winding, slippery or rough roads.

The cruise control does not apply the vehicle's brakes. Therefore the vehicle may gain speed when going down steep hills.

When climbing steep hills, the vehicle may lose speed. You may need to switch off cruise control and use the accelerator pedal.

Setting Cruise Control

1. Press **ON OFF**.

   illuminates white.

2. Accelerate to the desired speed (above 20 km/h).

3. Push the switch down to **SET/-**.

   illuminates green.

4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Increasing Set Speed

- Push the switch up to **RES/+** and hold it or briefly push to **RES/+** repeatedly.

  The vehicle will accelerate.

- Alternatively accelerate to the desired speed and store by pushing the switch down to **SET/-**.

Note

Vehicle speed can be increased by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Decreasing Set Speed

1. Push the switch down to **SET/-** and hold it or briefly push to **SET/-** repeatedly.

   The vehicle will decelerate.

2. Release the switch at the desired speed.

Deactivation

- Press **CANCEL**.

  illuminates white.

Alternatively, do one of the following:

- Reduce vehicle speed below approximately 20 km/h.
- Press the brake pedal.
- The TCS or the ESC operates.

Resume Stored Speed

When the cruise control is on and speed is above 20 km/h:

- Push the lever up to **RES/+**.

  The most recently set speed will automatically resume.

  illuminates green.

Switching Off

- Press **ON OFF**.

  extinguishes.

  The stored speed is deleted.

Note

Switching the ignition off also deletes the stored speed.

Object Detection Systems

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, the FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes.

A visual alert illuminates when a vehicle ahead is detected, which changes to amber if the distance to the vehicle ahead becomes too close. When approaching the vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a red flashing alert and rapidly beeps.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m and operates at speeds above 40 km/h.

⚠ Warning

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

FCA can be disabled with the FCA steering wheel control switch.

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead

FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. When a vehicle is detected, the vehicle ahead indicator will display green.

Note

Vehicles may not be detected on curves, highway exit ramps, or hills, due to poor visibility; or if a vehicle ahead is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

⚠ Warning

FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

⚠ Warning

Poor illumination conditions will prejudice the camera identification of vehicles ahead.

Motorcycles may not be detected by the camera when its is dark enough outside.

Collision Alert

Cluster Alert

Reflected LED Alert

When your vehicle approaches another detected vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash and sound several high-pitched beeps from the front. When this Collision Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed. Cruise control may be disengaged when the Collision Alert occurs.

Press on the steering wheel to adjust the alert sensitivity. Each press cycles the alert sensitivity through three settings: Far, Medium, Near or Off.

When pressed, the current alert sensitivity setting displays briefly on the instrument cluster. The alert sensitivity setting is maintained until it is changed.

Note

Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the following alert sensitivity. The range of selectable alert sensitivity may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Tailgating Alert

The amber Collision Alert display will stay continuously illuminated when following a detected vehicle ahead much too closely.

Selecting the Alert Timing

The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press to set the FCA timing to far, medium, near, or off. The first button press shows the current control setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timing may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

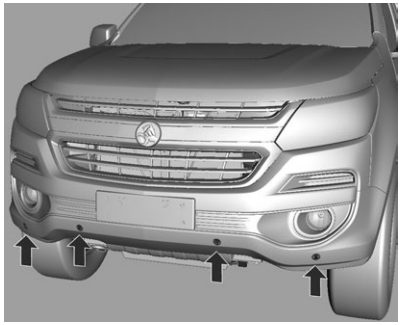
Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror may correct the issue.

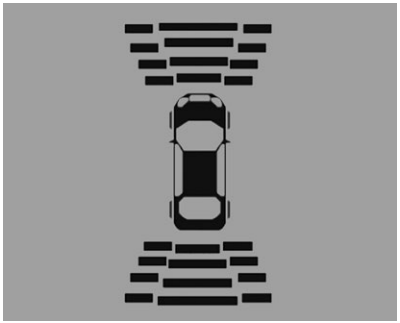
Parking Assist



⚠ Warning

The parking assist makes parking easier by measuring the distance between the vehicle and the obstacles and giving acoustic signals. It is the driver, however, who bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuver.

With Rear Parking Assist (RPA), and if equipped with Front Parking Assist (FPA), as the vehicle moves at speeds of less than 11 km/h the sensors on the bumpers may detect objects up to 2.3 m behind and 1.0 m in front of the vehicle within a zone 25 cm high off the ground and below bumper level. These detection distances may be shorter during warmer or humid weather. Blocked sensors will not detect objects and can also cause false detections. Keep the sensors clean of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush; and clean sensors after a car wash in freezing temperatures. Beeps for FPA are higher pitched than for RPA.



The instrument cluster may have a parking assist display with bars that show “distance to object” and object location information for the Parking Assist system. As the object gets closer, more bars light up.

The rear vision camera display will show the symbol ⚠. As the object gets closer, the symbol will get bigger and its colour changes from amber to red.

The system consists of four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper and four ultrasonic parking sensors in the front bumper (if equipped).

⚠ Danger

The driver's complete attention is required when driving.

The Parking Assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 11 km/h. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with parking assist, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or backing.

Note

Attached parts in the detection area cause system malfunction.

⚠ Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Caution

Sensitivity of the sensor could be reduced caused by external influences, e.g. layers on the sensor surface (ice, snow, mud, soiling, multiple varnishing/ painting, etc.).

The sensor could detect a non-existing object (echo disturbance) caused by either external acoustical disturbances, such as another park assist system, or external mechanic disturbances such as a car wash, rain, extreme wind conditions, hail, etc.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Performance of the parking assist system could be reduced due to the change of the sensor position by external changes to the vehicle, e.g. lowering of the shock absorber over lifetime due to: temperature changes, changing of tyres, loading of the vehicle, lowering/tuning of the vehicle etc.

Particular conditions apply for high vehicles (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, transporters). Object identification in the upper part of the vehicle can not be guaranteed.

Activation

When reverse gear is engaged, the front and rear systems are activated automatically.

An obstacle is indicated by acoustic warnings. The interval between the warnings becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance is less than 30 cm, the acoustic warning sounds continuously.

Note

The acoustic warning ceases if the vehicle remains stationary for 3 seconds or more (except in continuous sound)

Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when:

- The vehicle is driven above 11 km/h — front and rear parking assist is deactivated.
- The reverse gear is disengaged — rear parking assist is deactivated.
- A fault in the system occurs.

Note

The front parking assist will reactivate automatically until the vehicle speed exceeds 25 km/h.

The system can be manually turned off by pressing the P button on the instrument panel while Parking Assist is on.

Pressing the P button while Parking Assist is off will allow the system to turn on when activation parameters are met.

Fault

To test a possible fault:

1. Park the vehicle on an area with no obstacles in a range of 2 meters of the rear bumper.
2. Apply the parking brake firmly.
3. Turn the ignition key to **ON**.
4. Engage reverse.
5. When the reverse gear is engaged:
   - If there is no acoustic signal: Check the power supply by verifying that the reverse lamps are working.
   - If just one acoustic signal is given followed shortly after by an almost continuous acoustic signal, it indicates a fault: Seek the assistance of a Holden dealer.
   - If one acoustic signal is given followed by separate acoustic signals like when the vehicle gets closer to an object: Seek the assistance of a Holden dealer.
   - If two acoustic signals are given: Seek the assistance of a Holden dealer.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

If equipped, RCTA displays a red warning triangle with a left or right pointing arrow on the RVC screen to warn of traffic coming from the left or right. This system detects objects coming from up to 20 m from the left or right side of the vehicle. When an object is detected, three beeps sound from the left or right.

The system works in reverse gear.

The system range varies accordingly to the type of parking space vacancy, e.g. 45º.

Use caution while backing up when towing a trailer, as the RCTA detection zones that extend out from the back of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed.

Note

RCTA may not operate when the RCTA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms.

⚠ Danger

RCTA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all.

Turning the Features On or Off

The P button of the instrument panel is used to turn on or off the front and rear parking assist. The indicator LED next to the button comes on when the features are on and turns off when the features have been disabled.

Turn off parking assist when towing a trailer.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, the SBZA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas. The SBZA warning display will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the turn signal in corresponding side is on.

⚠ Danger

The driver's complete attention is required when driving.

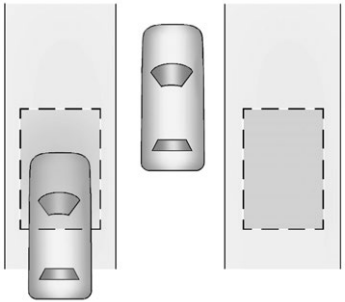
SBZA does not alert the driver to vehicles rapidly approaching outside of the side blind zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

SBZA Detection Zones

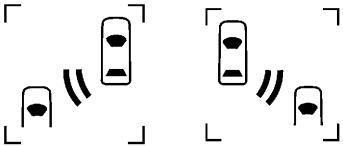


The SBZA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or approximately 3.5 m. The height of the zone is approximately between 0.5 m and 2 m off the

ground. This zone starts at approximately the middle of the vehicle and goes back 5 m.

How the System Works

The SBZA symbol lights up in the side mirrors when the system detects a moving vehicle in the next lane over that is in the side blind zone. This indicates it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the SBZA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.



Left Side Mirror Display **Right Side Mirror Display**

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror SBZA displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating. When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror display will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the turn signal is activated in the same direction of a detected vehicle, this display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

SBZA can be disabled through vehicle settings. See “Collision Detection Systems” under “Vehicle” in the Infotainment System. If SBZA is disabled by the driver, the SBZA mirror displays will not light up.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

SBZA displays may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly, for a stopped vehicle, or when towing a trailer. The SBZA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed. Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer. SBZA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a trailer, bicycle, or object extending out to either side of the vehicle. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the side blind zone, especially in wet conditions. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA may not operate when the SBZA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms.

If the SBZA displays do not light up when vehicles are in the blind zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

When SBZA is disabled for any reason other than the driver turning it off, the Side Blind Zone Alert On option will not be available on the personalisation menu.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

⚠ Warning

The driver's complete attention is required when driving.

Never rely solely on the rear vision camera when reversing the vehicle.

There is a blind spot that can not be sensed by the rear vision camera.

The rear vision camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention to the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle, always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

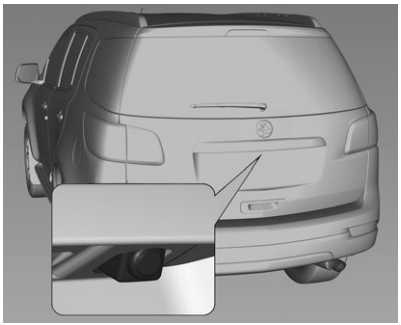
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the rear vision camera, the camera may become misaligned. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

Camera Location



The camera is located on the rear tailgate.

The RVC cannot display objects:

- Close to the corners of the bumper.
- Forward of the camera.
- Higher than the camera.

RVC Display

The camera image appears on the infotainment system display when reverse gear is selected.

The area directly behind the vehicle is displayed in real time.

Note

- The distance of objects seen on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.
- Objects of different heights will appear to be different distances from the vehicle.
- The display brightness automatically adjusts to suit ambient lighting conditions.

- Guidelines to assist reversing are also displayed. This can be changed, see *Settings ⇨ 130* or *Settings ⇨ 165*.

Operating the RVC

To activate:

1. Turn the ignition key to **ON**.
2. Select reverse gear.

   The camera and display automatically activates.

Note
When the shift lever is moved to another position, the RVC deactivates.

Cleaning

The lens requires regular cleaning to ensure optimum performance.

Use only a soft cloth, mild soap and water.

⚠ Danger

Do not use abrasive cleaners or scouring pads as they could scratch the lens, impairing the systems performance.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

If equipped, LDW may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may provide an alert if the vehicle is crossing a lane without using a turn signal in that direction. LDW uses a camera to detect the lane markings at speeds of 60 km/h or greater.

⚠ Danger

The LDW system does not steer the vehicle. The LDW system may not:

- Provide enough time to avoid a crash.
- Detect lane markings under poor weather or visibility conditions. This can occur if the windshield or headlamps are blocked by dirt, snow, or ice; if they are not in proper condition; or if the sun shines directly into the camera.
- Detect road edges.
- Detect lanes on winding or hilly roads.

If LDW only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only warn you when

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

departing the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marking. Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windscreen, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair. Do not use LDW in bad weather conditions.

How the System Works

The LDW camera is on the windshield ahead of the rearview mirror.

To turn LDW on and off, press the button on the instrument panel. The button indicator illuminates when LDW is on.

When LDW is on, is green if LDW is available to warn of a lane departure. If the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction, changes to amber and flashes. Additionally, there will be three beeps on the right or left, depending on the lane departure direction.

When the System Does Not Seem To Work Properly

The system may not detect lanes as well when there are:

- Close vehicles ahead.
- Sudden lighting changes, such as when driving through tunnels.
- Banked roads.

If the LDW system is not functioning properly when lane markings are clearly visible, cleaning the windshield may help.

LDW alerts may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service. Turn LDW off if these conditions continue.

Intelligent Alert Suppression

The system alerts may be suppressed in the following conditions:

- Braking (obstacle avoidance).
- Acceleration (passing another vehicle).
- Constant curves with great steering wheel interaction (driving downhill).
- Turn signal activated.

Fuel

Fuel for Diesel Engines

The selection of a high-quality fuel is important for maintaining optimum vehicle performance. Diesel fuel should meet or exceed the minimum requirements in the most current versions of the local fuel standards.

Do not use fuel with more than 10 ppm sulphur. If available, use of diesel fuel with less sulphur is highly recommended for better emissions.

Do not use a diesel blend containing more than 5% biodiesel by volume.

Some conditions, such as dirty fuel, may decrease fuel filter life and a CHANGE FUEL FILTER message may come on in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Caution

Use of fuel that does not comply with the required technical standards can lead to engine power loss, increased wear, or engine damage and may void your warranty.

Some improper fuels are:

- Diesel fuel with the addition of petrol.
- Diesel fuel mixed with engine oil or automatic transmission fluid.
- Triglyceride fuels, such as raw vegetable oil or animal fat, in any form, including with blends of diesel or biodiesel.
- Marine diesel fuel and fuel oils.
- Diesel-water emulsions, such as Aquazole.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Aftermarket diesel fuel additives, which contain alcohols, organo-metallic additives, or water emulsifiers.

Caution

If the vehicle is accidentally refuelled with petrol, do not continue driving the vehicle. Driving the vehicle will damage the fuel system. Have the vehicle towed to a qualified technician to have the petrol removed from the tank and fuel system. Refuel with Ultra Low Sulphur Diesel fuel. It is also recommended to have the fuel system flushed with Ultra Low Sulphur Diesel, to ensure all petrol is removed.

Biodiesel

Biodiesel is a renewable fuel produced from vegetable oils or animal fats that have been chemically modified to make it compatible with diesel fuel.

Caution

Do not use home-made biodiesel or home test kits because the quality cannot be verified by approved scientific methods. Do not use raw vegetable oil or other unmodified bio-oils, fats, or blends of vegetable oil with diesel. They could damage the fuel system and engine, and damages would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Biodiesel Blends

Fuels with a biodiesel content up to 5% by volume may be used (e.g., named B5). Only use biodiesel blends up to 5% by volume that comply with your country's or region's fuel standards.

Caution

Do not use blends containing more than 5% biodiesel. Any engine, fuel system, or exhaust after-treatment system damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

As a renewable fuel, biodiesel provides some environmental benefits. However, biodiesel has unique properties and needs to be handled differently than diesel fuel. Its use presents additional risks and may not be appropriate in all situations. Certain vehicle operating modes increase these risks and should be avoided.

Biodiesel fuel quality degrades with time and exposure to high temperature quicker than Ultra Low Sulphur Diesel fuel. More frequent refuelling provides the best opportunity to have a supply of fresh fuel. Storage at hot ambient temperatures will accelerate biodiesel degradation.

If the vehicle is not driven often and uses little fuel, or if it is stored for extended periods of time, avoid the use of biodiesel blended fuels. When the vehicle is stored for longer than one month, it should be run out of biodiesel to below one-quarter tank, refuelled with biodiesel-free fuel, and driven several kilometres before storage.

Filling the Tank

⚠ Danger

Always switch off the engine and any mobile phones when refuelling.

Do not smoke or allow open flames or sparks near the vehicle when refuelling.

If fuel fumes are detected while driving, the cause should be identified and corrected without delay by a Holden Dealer.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

Static electricity can ignite fuel vapour. Only use pumps, hoses and containers that are properly grounded when filling up with fuel.

To avoid injury to you and to others, read and follow all instructions at the petrol station pump.

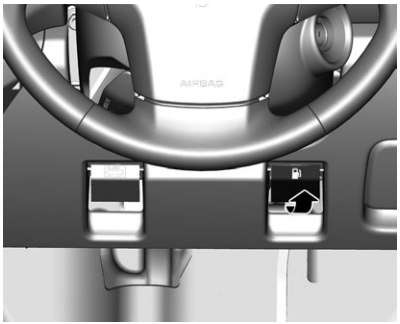
Always fill the fuel tank at the intermediate or fast fill rate. Do not add any more fuel after the fuel filler first clicks off or fuel blows back. This allows room for the fuel to expand inside the tank.

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately from the vehicle. Replace the fuel cap and close the fuel opening then spray or splash with water.

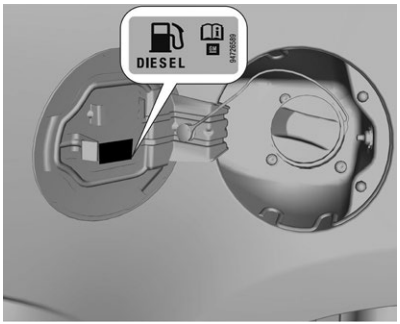
Tank Capacity

See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *280*.

Fuel Filler Door



1. Pull the release lever.



The fuel filler door is located at the rear side of the vehicle, on the left.

2. Slowly remove the cap.
3. Place the fuel filler cap in the fuel filler door.
4. After refuelling, replace the cap.
5. Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.
6. Close the fuel filler door.

Caution

Before entering a car wash, ensure the fuel filler door is closed to avoid damage.

Trailer Towing

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as caravans, boat trailers or any other special purpose trailer.

Maximum Towing Capacities (kg)

	2.8L Diesel
Maximum ball load	300
Maximum towing capacity:	
Braked trailer	3,000
Unbraked trailer	750

Note

Exceeding these values could affect the vehicle warranty.

Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

For mandatory towing equipment, see “Towing and Loading Equipment” later in this section.

A Holden Dealer will assist with supply and installation of towing equipment.

Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may affect the vehicle warranty to the extent that Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle. See “Towing and Loading Equipment” later in this section.

⚠ Warning

Holden towing equipment is recommended where it is available. Where it is not available, no recommendation is made as to the make of equipment which should be used.

Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or injury caused by use of such equipment. The use of such equipment may void your vehicle warranty, to the extent Holden

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle.

It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

⚠ Warning

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and may enter if the tailgate is open.

When towing a trailer:

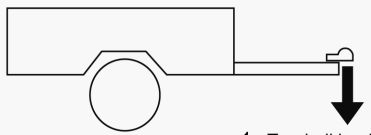
- Do not drive with the tailgate open.

(Continued)

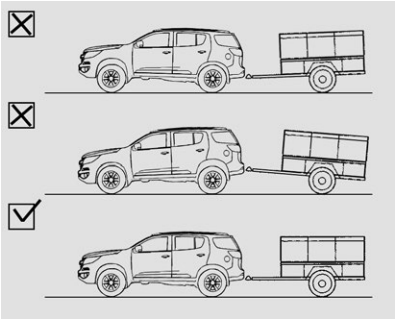
Warning (Continued)

- Fully open the instrument panel vents and set the climate control air distribution to or and outside air off.

Trailer Recommendations



A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the tow bar. This weight is called the tow bar ball weight or tow ball load (1).



- For single-axle trailers, the tow ball load should be 10 % of the loaded trailer weight. For heavy trailers with more than one axle, the tow ball load should be 5 % - 10 % of the loaded trailer weight.

  If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.

- Ensure the ball load does not exceed 10 % of the maximum loaded trailer weight. Refer to Towing and Loading Equipment later in this section.

- Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards within the trailer, to change the balance.
- Check the tow ball load before coupling the trailer to the towing vehicle.
- Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow ball load is included. See Axle Loads under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *277*.
- If maximum axle loads are exceeded, weight should be removed from the rear of the vehicle.
- If the load balance cannot be corrected, use a load distribution hitch (only for tow bars that support load distribution hitches).

Towing and Loading Equipment

Tow Load	Mandatory Equipment	Recommended Equipment
Up to 750 kg	Holden tow bar	Load distribution hitch.
	Holden trailer wiring harness	
Between 750 kg and 3,000 kg	Holden tow bar	Load distribution hitch.
	Holden trailer wiring harness	
	Brakes on the trailer	

Load Distribution Hitch

- The vehicle may have a load distribution hitch.
- The load distribution hitch must be removed when not in use. Do not leave the hitch assembly in the receiver unless a trailer is attached.
- A load distribution hitch transfers load to the vehicle's front wheels aiding steering and brake performance.
- Do not exceed the maximum towing capacities specified. See Maximum Towing Capacities previously in this section.
- Do not exceed the total front or rear axle loads specified. See Axle Loads under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *277*.

Towing Precautions

- When heavily loading the vehicle or when towing, inflate tyres to the maximum recommended pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *247*.
- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 Nm (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.
- If the vehicle has headlamp range adjustment, headlamps may need re-aiming after the loaded trailer has been hitched.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes when descending steep hills.
- Ensure that the tow bar does not obscure the rear number plate. Remove the tow bar tongue when not required for towing.
- The M10 anti-rattle bolt and nut should be removed when towing to prevent damage to the bolt or tow bar tongue.

Trailer Brakes

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with a trailer mass of more than 750 kg.
- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

Running-in when Towing

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.

If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission or rear axle.

Off-Road Loading and Towing

To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle (and trailer) and to improve safety when operating the vehicle off-road, reduce its speed and minimise the load being carried or towed.

Vehicle Maintenance

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glove box.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

If the system detects trailer sway movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle/trailer combination is selectively braked until the trailer sway ceases. While the system is working, keep steering as still as possible.

TSC is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system and may be disabled by turning the Traction Control System (TCS) or ESC off. See *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ *196*. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *197*.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Fitting Driving Lamps

Do not fit any accessory over the upper or lower air intakes at the front of the vehicle, as this may affect engine cooling.

The Holden Genuine Accessories are an exception, however they should be removed in high load and high temperature conditions.

Caution

In high load and high temperature applications (e.g. towing) no objects should be fitted over the upper or lower air intake at the front of the vehicle, as this could affect cooling. This includes removing Holden Genuine Accessories in this area, in these conditions.

Fitting Roo/Nudge Bars

If a roo/nudge bar is to be fitted, it is critical that the Holden approved roo/nudge bar is used. Other types must not be fitted.

The Holden roo/nudge bar is available from a Holden Dealer and has been tested for compatibility with the vehicle's design, including the Holden airbag system.

⚠ Warning

Fitting other types of roo/nudge bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling.

Roo/nudge bars should not be fitted to vehicles operating in urban areas, as they increase the risk of injury to a pedestrian in the event of a collision.

Snorkel Intake

It is necessary to reverse the snorkel intake:

- When driving in snowy conditions.
- Where there are other heavy contaminants such as excessive dust or insect swarms.
- To prevent snow or other contaminants from entering the snorkel and engine air intake.

1. Loosen the two screws.
2. Remove the snorkel intake.
3. Rotate the snorkel intake 180º and refit, securing with the two screws.
4. Once conditions have stopped, return the snorkel intake to its original position.

Vehicle Care

General Information
General Information 222
Vehicle Storage 222
Emission Information 222
Emission Control System 222

Vehicle Checks
Doing Your Own Service Work 223
Bonnet 224
Engine Compartment Overview 226
Engine Oil 226
Engine Oil Life System 228
Automatic Transmission Fluid 229
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 229
Engine Coolant 229
Washer Fluid 230
Brake Fluid 231
Battery 232
Fuel Filter 233
Diesel Fuel System Bleeding 234
Wiper Blade Replacement 234

Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement 234
Headlamps 235
Front Turn Signal Lamps 236
Taillamps 237
Licence Plate Lamp 240

Electrical System
Fuses 241
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 242
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 245

Vehicle Tools
Tools 247

Wheels and Tyres
Wheels and Tyres 247
Tyre Pressure 247
Tyre Pressure Monitor System 248
Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation 250
Tread Depth 252
Tyre Rotation 252
Buying New Tyres 253
Wheel Covers 253
Tyre Chains 254
Tyre Changing 254

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 261

Towing the Vehicle
Towing the Vehicle 263
Towing Another Vehicle 264

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 266
Interior Care 271

General Information

Where specified, use only Holden genuine parts and accessories.

Vehicle Storage

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Clean and preserve rubber seals.
- Change engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check coolant and corrosion protection.
- Adjust the tyre pressure to the value specified for a full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

  Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

  Close the bonnet.

Before returning the vehicle to the road:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

  Check the power windows operation.
- Check the tyre pressures.
- Fill the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.

Emission Information

The emission control systems are designed to reduce the amount of hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) that are emitted from the engine and fuel system into the atmosphere. HC and NOx, when exposed to sunlight under certain conditions, contribute to photochemical smog. In addition, CO is toxic to inhale.

Emission Control System

Major emission control systems the vehicle may have are:

- Evaporative emission control system. This system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapour from the fuel system and recycle the vapours through the normal combustion process.
- Crankcase emission control system. This system is designed to prevent blow-by gases from escaping into the atmosphere and recycle them through the combustion process.
- Exhaust emission control system. The various components of this system operate collectively to limit HC, CO and NOx emissions in the exhaust petrol. The exhaust emission control system consists of components including electronic control of spark, fuel and idle speed. In addition vehicles have a catalytic converter and closed loop mixture control system.

It is recommended that service and repair to fuel or emission systems be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer.

Owner responsibility

The engine, engine control system and exhaust system of the vehicle must NOT be modified in any way.

> **⚠ Warning**
>
> Any person who removes, modifies or hinders any part of the emission control system may be contravening Australian Design Rules. It is also illegal to drive a vehicle modified in this way.

Maintenance requirements

Have the vehicle serviced at the frequency shown in the Maintenance schedule in the Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that servicing be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer who will maintain the vehicle's emission control system as per the Service & Warranty Booklet.

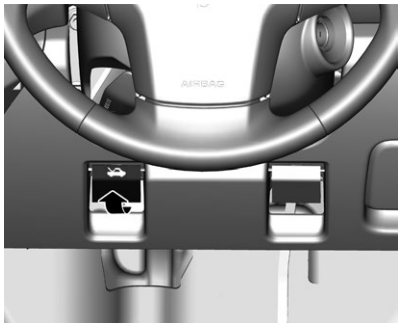
Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

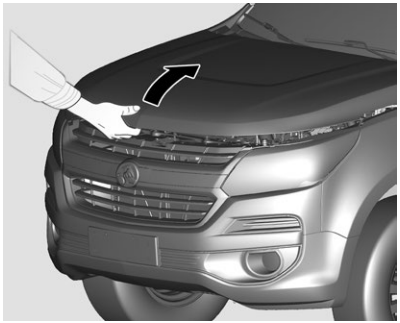
> **⚠ Warning**
>
> Do not touch engine compartment components when the ignition is on.

Bonnet

Opening

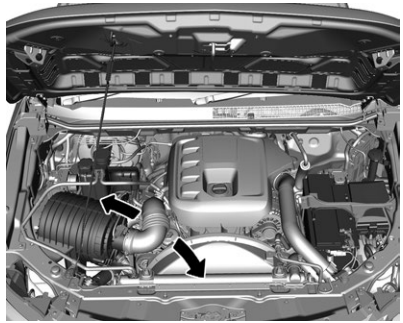


1. Pull the release lever rearwards and upwards.



Note
Do not step on the front Nudge Bar (if equipped) to access the engine compartment

2. Push the safety catch towards the driver's side and open the bonnet.



3. Remove the support rod from the holder and secure in the bonnet aperture.

Closing

⚠ Warning

To avoid injury and/or damage to the vehicle, check each time, before the bonnet is closed, that the contact area is unobstructed.

Before closing the bonnet, be sure that all the filler caps are closed securely.

1. Place the support rod into the holder.
2. Lower the bonnet to approximately 30 cm and allow it to drop into the catch.
3. Check that the bonnet is engaged.
4. If it is not engaged, open the bonnet and repeat Steps 2 and 3.

Note
Do not push on the bonnet to close.

⚠ Warning

If while driving you notice that the bonnet has not been properly closed, pull the vehicle over to the side of the road at the earliest possible moment and close the bonnet correctly.

Engine Compartment Overview

Diesel Engine

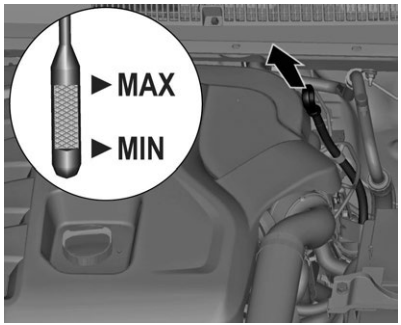
1. *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *229*
2. *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *231*
3. *Engine Oil* ⇨ *226*
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *226*
5. *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *230*
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *242*
7. *Battery* ⇨ *232*
8. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *229*

Engine Oil

Checking Oil Level

- Check the engine oil level regularly and before a long journey.
- Maintain the correct level.
- The engine must be at operating temperature and the ignition turned off for at least 10 minutes.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.



2. Remove the dipstick and wipe clean.

3. Insert the dipstick to the stop on the handle.
4. Remove and read the engine oil level.

   The level should be at the **MAX** mark. Add oil if the level is at the **MIN** mark.
5. Insert the dipstick to the stop on the handle.

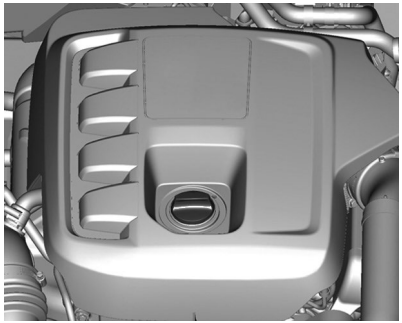
Note

- The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.
- Under certain driving conditions such as short trips, prolonged idle, stop-start traffic or downhill driving, the engine oil level may increase due to repeated interruption of the diesel particulate filter self-cleaning process. Under such driving conditions the engine oil level should be checked more frequently.

For correct engine oil specification, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *274*.

Adding Engine Oil

See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *280*.



The engine oil filler cap is located on the top of the engine.

1. Rotate the engine oil filler cap anticlockwise and remove.
2. Add enough oil to reach below the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.
3. Check the level on the dipstick and add further oil if necessary.

   The engine oil must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

Caution

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

4. Replace the engine oil filler cap tightly.

⚠ Danger

Engine oil is an irritant and if ingested, can cause illness or death.

Keep out of reach of children.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

Be careful when draining the engine oil as it may be hot.

Engine Oil Life System

The vehicle has a computer system that calculates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include:

- Engine revolutions
- Engine temperature
- Distance driven
- Decreased oil quality due to fuel dilution resulting from diesel particulate filter self-cleaning

Based on driving conditions, the distance at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

On some vehicles, when the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, a CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is displayed to indicate that an oil change is required. See *Engine Oil Messages* ⇨ *76*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is repeatedly ignored, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate and the engine will enter reduced power mode. See your dealer for service.

It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year or in accordance with the maintenance schedule in the Service & Warranty booklet. At this time, the oil life system must be reset.

For vehicles without the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message, an oil change is required when the OIL LIFE REMAINING percentage is near 0%.

Your dealer has trained service personnel who can perform this work and reset the system.

It is also important to check the oil level regularly and maintain it at the correct level.

If the oil life system is ever reset accidentally, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the maintenance schedule outlined in the Service & Warranty Booklet. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so the system can calculate the next engine oil change. It will not reset itself.

To reset the engine oil life system:

1. Display the OIL LIFE REMAINING screen on the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *71*.
2. Press and hold SET/CLR for several seconds. The oil life will change to 100%.

If the vehicle has a CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message and it comes back on when the vehicle is next started and/or the OIL LIFE REMAINING is near 0%, the engine oil life system has not been reset. Repeat the procedure.

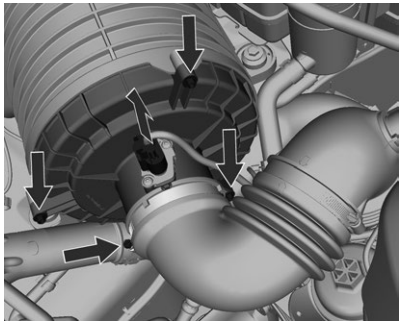
Automatic Transmission Fluid

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level.
A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



To replace the engine air filter, release the clamp and remove the air cleaner outlet duct. Disconnect the air sensor, unscrew the 3 screws and remove the filter housing.

Engine Coolant

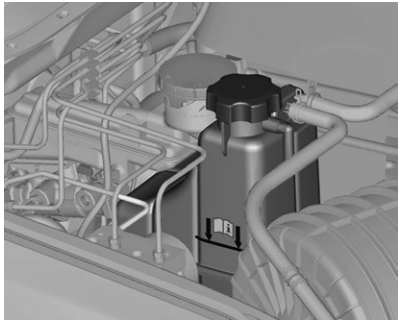
Engine Coolant Level

Check the coolant level at least once a week.

Checking Coolant Level

⚠ Warning

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns.



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the line on the coolant reservoir.

Adding Coolant

Caution

If the coolant level is too low, engine damage may occur.

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Note

Use only approved coolant. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *274*.

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
3. Add the required amount of coolant.
4. Replace the cap securely.

   If the coolant requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer.

⚠ Warning

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with coolant.

Wash off with soap and water.

Keep out of reach of children.

If the coolant level is low, there may be a leak in the cooling system:

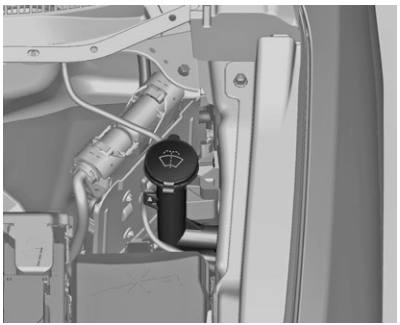
1. Look for leaks at the radiator hoses and connections, heater hoses and connections, radiator and water pump.

   Take care when checking these areas as they may still be hot.
2. If a major leak or other problems are found, do not run the engine until all problems have been repaired. Contact a Holden Dealer.
3. If no problems are found, refill the coolant reservoir. See Adding Coolant previously in this section.

⚠ Warning

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns.

Washer Fluid



Check the fluid level weekly.

Adding Washer Fluid

1. Lift the front of the cap up.

   Use the correct amount of washer fluid additive. Refer to a Holden Dealer.

   Do not use ordinary soap or detergent as they froth up and damage the wiper rubbers.

2. Secure the cap.

Brake Fluid

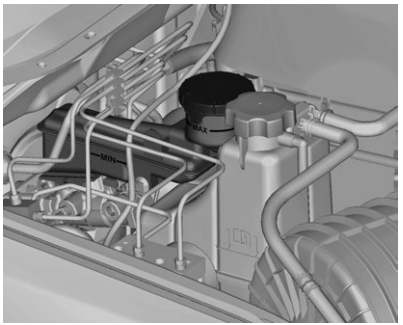
⚠ Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilt.

Caution

Avoid contact with eyes and skin. Wash any affected area immediately.

Checking Brake Fluid Level



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If the fluid level is correct, do not remove the reservoir cap, as brake fluid exposed to the atmosphere will quickly absorb moisture.

Adding Brake Fluid

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Wipe the sides of the cap clean.
3. Rotate the brake fluid reservoir cap anticlockwise and remove.
4. Top up with the recommended brake fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *274*.

⚠ Warning

Using brake fluid other than GM recommended brake fluid may cause corrosion to components of the braking system and reduced braking performance.

Use only new brake fluid. Use of old, used or inferior brake fluid may endanger the functioning of the brake system.

5. Secure the cap by rotating clockwise and clean up any spilt fluid.

If the brake fluid requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

Caution

Do not dispose of used brake fluid with household waste.

Use the local, authorised waste management facility.

Battery

⚠ Warning

Batteries emit an explosive gas mixture which may be ignited. Therefore, you should keep sparks and flames away from the battery at all times. Never smoke near a battery.

Batteries contain sulphuric acid. If acid contacts skin or clothing, flush immediately with plenty of water. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water and contact a doctor immediately.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash off immediately.

Take care with all metal objects and tools including items you may wear (for example jewellery, rings and metal watch bands) near battery terminals.

The vehicle battery is maintenance free, provided the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short distance driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.

Storing the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the battery according to the procedure described in Battery Disconnection, thus avoiding its discharge.

Battery Replacement

For battery location, see *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *226*.

Ensure that the battery is replaced with the same type and capacity as originally fitted. For replacement, refer to a Holden Dealer or authorised repairer.

Batteries must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Caution

Do not dispose of batteries with household waste.

Use the local, authorised waste management facility.

Battery Disconnection

The battery may discharge if the vehicle is not used for approximately four weeks.

To disconnect the battery:

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

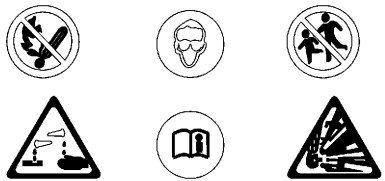
   Ensure the ignition is turned off before reconnecting the vehicle battery.

Note

If the battery becomes discharged or is disconnected, the power windows may need to be initialised. See *Power Windows* ⇨ *19*.

For emergency starting when the battery is flat, see *Jump Starting* ⇨ *261*.

Warning Label



Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive petrol may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

Fuel Filter

When the water level in fuel filter is excessive, **Water in Fuel – Contact Service** illuminates on the instrument panel.

Caution
The engine and fuel system may be seriously damaged if the vehicle is driven while **Water in Fuel – Contact Service** is illuminated. Contact a Holden Dealer immediately to have the fuel filter drained.

Note

The fuel filter will be drained when the vehicle is serviced. Refer to the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Diesel Fuel System Bleeding

The system requires bleeding if the vehicle has run out of fuel.

Note

A minimum of 5 litres of diesel fuel must be in the tank for the bleeding operation to work correctly.

1. Turn the ignition on for 15 seconds, and then off.
2. Repeat Step 1 three times.
3. Start the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds.
4. Repeat Steps 1 to 3 after 5 seconds.

   If the engine does not start, contact a Holden Dealer.

Wiper Blade Replacement

Regularly check the condition of the wiper blades.

- Replace hard, brittle or cracked blades or those that smear dirt on the windscreen.
- If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the blades and the windscreen. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *266*.

Bulb Replacement

Contact a trained service technician if unsure about the bulb replacement process.

When replacing bulbs:

- Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
- Turn off related switches.
- Fit bulbs of the specified wattage only.
- Do not touch bulbs or reflectors with bare hands.
- Clean stained bulbs with methylated spirits.

Bulbs to be Changed by a Holden Dealer

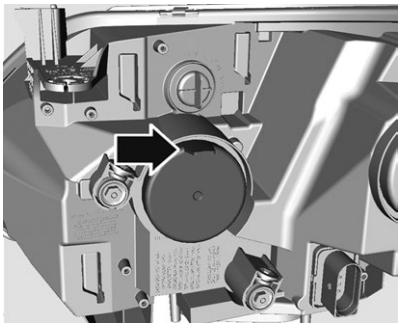
- Daytime running lamps (DRL).
- Fog lamps.
- Turn signal lamps in the exterior mirrors.
- Centre high mount brake lamp.
- LED rear lamps.
- Courtesy lamp.

- Reading lamps.
- Instrument panel lamps.

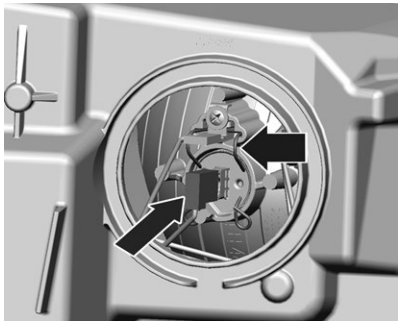
Caution
Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

Headlamps

High Beam

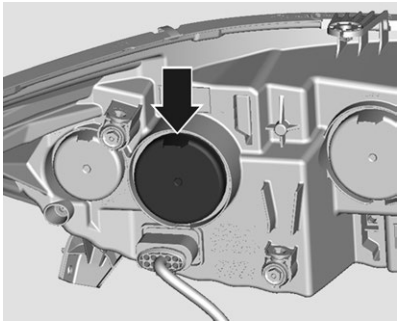


1. Remove the protective cover.

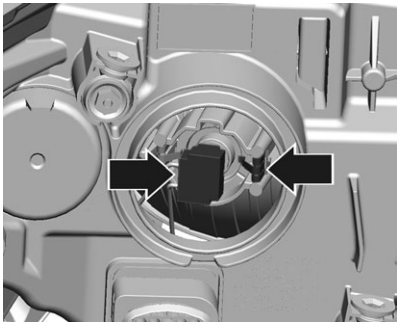


2. Unplug the connector from bulb.
3. Press the spring clip outward and disengage it.
4. Remove the bulb from the reflector housing.
5. When fitting a new bulb, engage the lugs in the recesses on the reflector.
6. Engage the spring clip.
7. Plug the connector onto bulb.
8. Place the protective cover in the right position and close it.

Low Beam



1. Remove the protective cover.

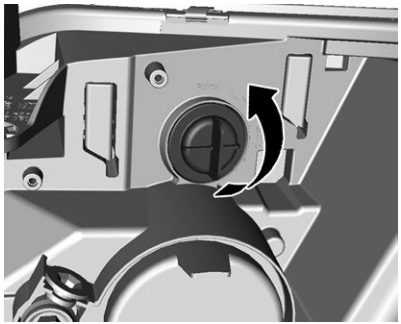


2. Unplug the connector from bulb.
3. Press the spring clip and disengage the bulb.
4. Remove the bulb from the reflector housing.
5. When fitting a new bulb, engage the lugs in the recesses on the reflector and press the bulb into position.
6. Plug the connector onto bulb.
7. Place the protective cover in the right position and close it.

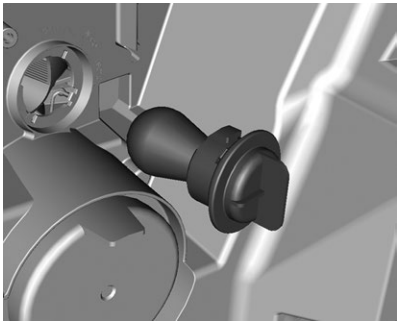
Headlamp Aim

Caution
If the headlamps need to be re-aimed, it is recommended that the vehicle is taken to a Holden dealer.

Front Turn Signal Lamps

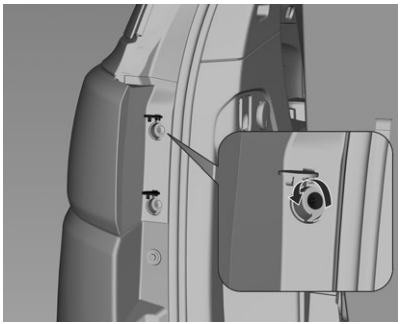


1. Rotate bulb holder counterclockwise and disengage.

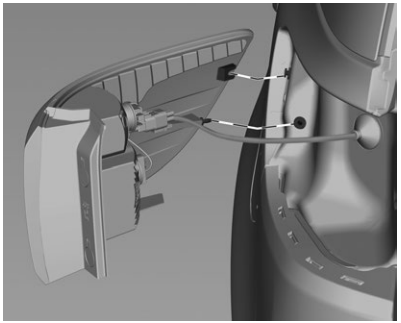


2. Push the bulb into the socket slightly, rotate counterclockwise and remove the bulb.
3. Insert a new bulb into the bulb holder and refit the holder into the reflector and rotate clockwise to engage.

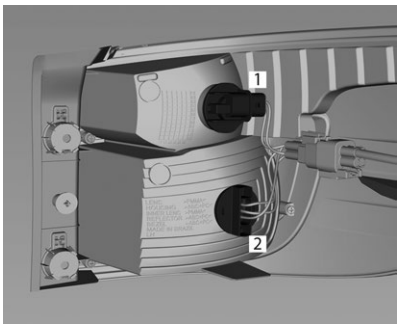
Taillamps



1. Open the two covers and remove both screws.



2. Remove the tail lamp assembly by pulling straight out of the body. Disconnect the electrical connector.

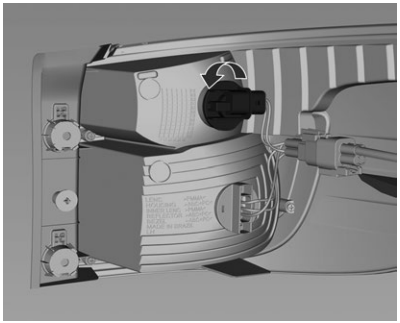


3. Turn signal lamp (1)

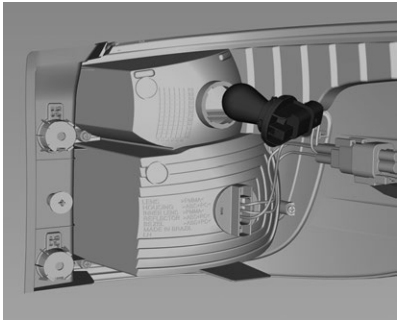
   Tail lamp/brake lamp (2)

Note

For LED version, replace the lamps (1). The tail lamp/brake lamp should be replaced by a Holden dealer.



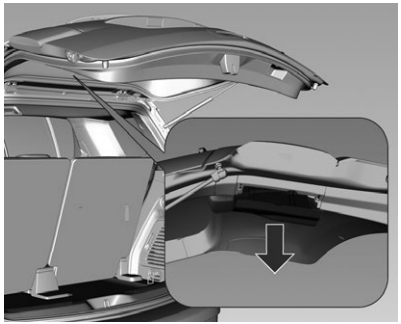
4. Rotate the relevant bulb holder anticlockwise.



5. Remove the bulb holder. Push the bulb into the socket slightly, rotate anticlockwise and remove the bulb.
6. Insert the bulb into the bulb holder. Insert the bulb holder into the tail lamp assembly, connect the electrical connector and fit it into place. Install the tail lamp assembly in the body and tighten the screws. Close the covers and engage.
7. Switch on the ignition, operate and check all lamps.

Liftgate Tail Lamps

1. Open the liftgate.



2. Remove the cover.

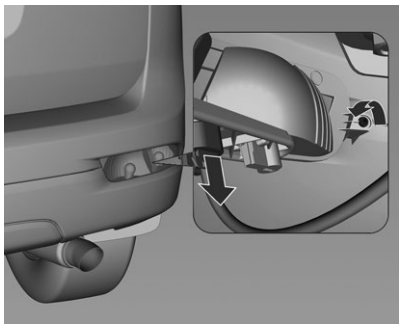
Note

For LED version the tail lamp/brake lamp should be replaced by a Holden dealer.

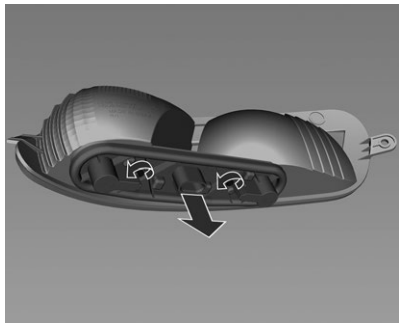
3. Rotate the relevant bulb holder anticlockwise and remove it.

4. Push the bulb into the socket slightly and remove bulb from the holder.
5. Insert a new bulb into the bulb holder. Refit the holder into the tail lamp assembly and connect the electrical connector. Close the cover and engage.
6. Switch on the ignition, operate and check all lamps.

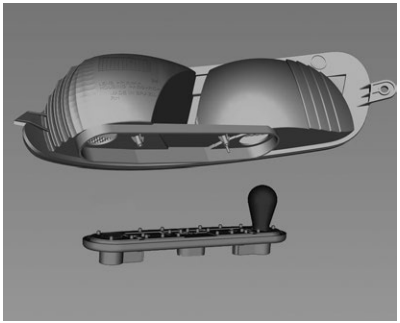
Reverse Lamps



1. From behind the rear bumper, unscrew the screw to remove the reverse lamp assembly and disconnect the electrical connector.



2. Unscrew the two screws to remove the bulb holder.



3. Replace the bulb.
4. Insert and turn the bulb into the bulb holder and screw it into place. Install the reverse lamp assembly in the body and tighten the screw. Connect the electrical connector.
5. Switch on the ignition, operate and check all lamps.

Licence Plate Lamp

1. Insert a screwdriver on the left side of the bulb housing.
2. Press to the side and release the spring.
3. Remove the bulb housing by pulling downwards, taking care not to pull on the cable.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to disengage.
6. Remove the bulb from the holder and replace the bulb.
7. Insert the bulb holder into the bulb housing by rotating clockwise.
8. Connect the electrical connector.
9. Insert the bulb housing into the tailgate.
10. Check lamp operation.

Electrical System

Fuses

Fuse boxes are located:

- In the engine compartment
- In a storage compartment on the driver's side

There is a primary fuse holder connected to the positive battery post.

⚠ Warning

Turn off the ignition (LOCK position) and any electrical equipment before changing a fuse.

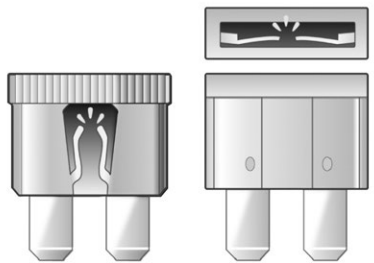
- Replace blown fuses promptly.
- A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire.
- Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.
- Some functions are protected by several fuses.

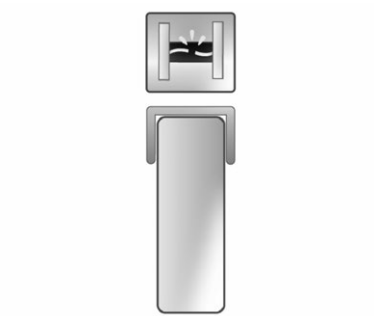
⚠ Warning

When replacing a fuse be sure to use a fuse of the specified amperage.

Never install a wire or similar as it could damage electrical components and cause a fire.

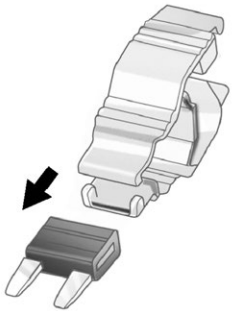
Any improper alterations to the electrical system may cause a fire hazard and engine damage. To maintain your own safety and that of the vehicle, have any work involving the electrical system or the replacement of high current fuses or relays carried out by a Holden Dealer.

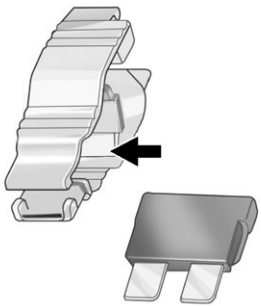


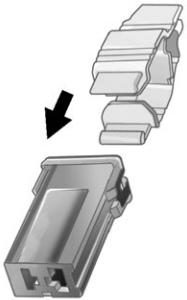


Fuse Extractor

A fuse extractor can be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.

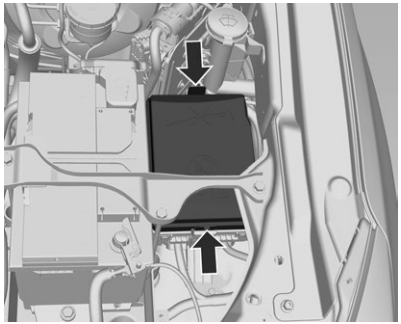






Place the fuse extractor on the top or side of the fuse to extract the fuse.

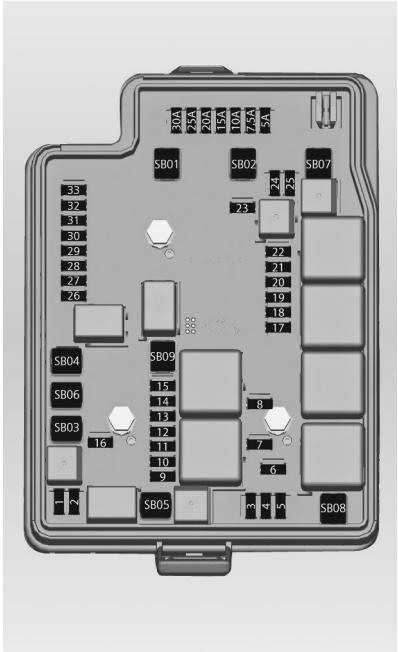
Engine Compartment Fuse Block



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment.

Disengage the cover, lift it upward and remove it.

Not all fuse box descriptions in this manual may apply to your vehicle. When inspecting the fuse box, refer to the fuse box label.



Mini Fuses	Usage
1	10A – Compressor A/C Clutch
2	Not Used
3	15A - Electric Power Steering (EPS) (if available)
4	Not Used
5	15A – Horn
6	15A – Front Fog Lamp (if available)
7	10A – High Beam LH
8	10A – High Beam RH
9	7.5A - Engine Control Module - (Diesel)
10	15A – Powertrain Relay (3) – (Diesel)
11	20A – Engine Control Module (1) (Diesel)
12	10A – Powertrain Relay (1)

Mini Fuses	Usage
13	10A – Powertrain Relay (2)
14	15A – Powertrain Relay (4)
15	15A – Run Crank Relay Signal
16	15A – Automatic Transmission Control Module (if available)
17	10A – Transfer Case Module, Head Lamp Leveling, Trailer Interface Module (if available)
18	10A – Power Supply Cluster - A/C - Airbag Module
19	20A – Fuel Pump (Diesel)
20	Not Used
21	30A – Rear Demister (if available)

Mini Fuses	Usage
22	15A - Outside Rear View Mirror Demister (if available)
23	Not Used
24	20A - Rear Wiper (SUV)
25	10A - Front / Rear (SUV) Washer Pump
26	10A - Park Assist (if available)
27	5A – Body Control Module
28	15A – Auxiliary Lamps Provision (If equipped)
29	30A – ABS or ESC Module (if available)
30	10A – Horn
31	15A – Body Control Module
32	15A – Engine Control Module (Battery) (Diesel)

Mini Fuses	Usage
33	10A – Communication Wire Between Modules

JCase Fuses	Usage
SB01	50A – ABS or ESC Module Pump (if available)
SB02	30A – Transfer Case Control Module (4X4) (if available)
SB03	60A – Preheating Glow Plug Module (Diesel)
SB04	20A – Rear Power Outlet (Load Area)
SB05	30A – Starter Motor Solenoid
SB06	30A – Front Wiper
SB07	30A – Fuel Heater (Diesel)
SB08	Not Used (Diesel)

JCase Fuses	Usage
SB09	30A – Spare

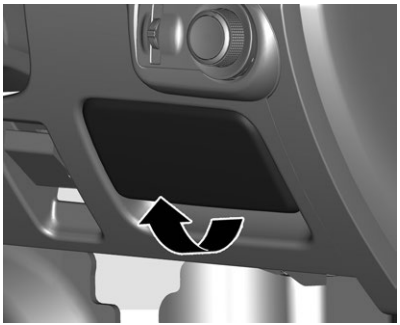
Maxi	Usage
F34*	30A – Trailer Hitch Module (if available)
*: Located near battery positive terminal	

Relays	Usage
RLY01	Starter
RLY03	High Beam
RLY05	Not Used
RLY08	Front Wiper Control
RLY09	Front Wiper Speed
RLY10	Rear Demister and Outside Rear View Mirror Demister (if available)
RLY11	Powertrain
RLY12	A/C Clutch
RLY13	Fuel Heater (Diesel)

Relays	Usage
RLY14	Not Used (Diesel)
RLY15	Not Used
RLY18	Run Crank
RLY19	Fuel Pump (Diesel)

Instrument Panel Fuse Block

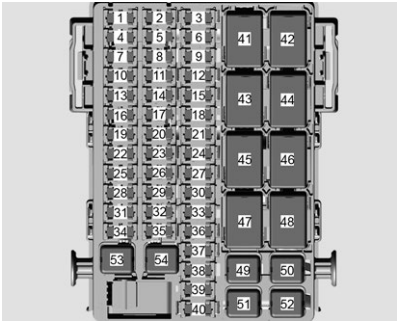
The fuse box is behind the instrument panel cap.



Remove the instrument panel cap in the direction of the arrow.

Reinstall the cap in reverse order.

Not all fuse box descriptions in this manual may apply to your vehicle. When inspecting the fuse box, refer to the fuse box label.



Mini Fuses	Usage
1	20A – Body Control Module (6)
3	20A – Cigarette Lighter (if available)

Mini Fuses	Usage
6	20A – Front and Rear Power Outlets (if available)
7	30A – Body Control Module (8)
10	20A – Radio (if available)
11	2A – Ignition Switch
12	15A - Side Blind Zone (SBZ) (If available)
13	15A – Body Control Module (3)
14	10A – Front A/C Control Module
15	15A – Seat Heated (If available)
16	15A – Body Control Module (1)
17	30A – Front Door Power Window Switch
18	10A – Rear A/C Blower

Mini Fuses	Usage
19	30A – Rear Door Power Window Switch (if available)
20	15A – Body Control Module (4)
21	10A – Spare
22	30A – Power Seat (if available)
25	10A – Sensing and Diagnose Module (SDM)
26	15A – Body Control Module (2)
27	2A – Clock Spring
28	7.5A – Data Link Connector (DLC)
30	10A – Tailgate Lock
31	10A – Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC), Displays - Radio (Instrument Panel), USB

Mini Fuses	Usage
33	10A – Central Gateway Module (CGM) - Cyber Security
34	30A – Front A/C Blower
35	30A – Rear A/C Blower
37	10A – Front Collision Alert (FCA) / Rain Sensor (if available)
39	10A – Rear View Mirrors (if available)

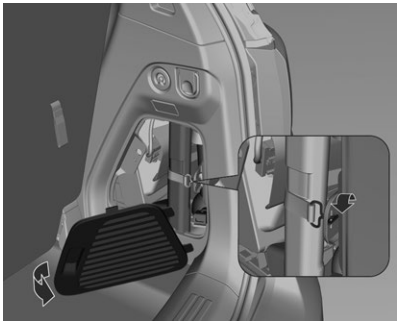
JCase Fuses	Usage
53	40A – BUS-C (fuses: F12, F30, F33, F37, F39, F40)
54	40A – Accessory (12V)

Relays	Usage
RLY43	Rear A/C Blower
RLY45	C-Enable
RLY46	RAP and Accessory (12V)
RLY47	RAP and Accessory (12V)
RLY48	Run relay

Vehicle Tools

Tools

The jack and tools are located behind a cover on the driver's side of the load compartment. See *Tyre Changing* ⇨ *254*.



1. Lift lever to unlatch.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Unhook the strap.
4. Remove the jack.
5. Remove the tools.

Wheels and Tyres

Tyre and Rim Condition

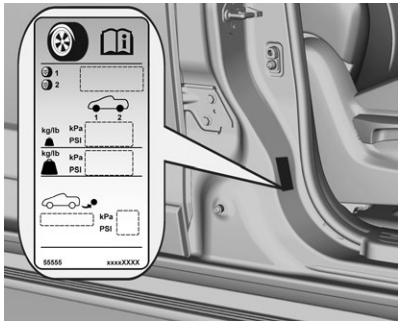
- To avoid tyre and rim damage and possible tyre blow-out, do not drive over sharp edges.
- Drive over edges slowly and at right angles, if possible.
- When parking, ensure the tyres are not pressed against the edge of the kerb.
- Check the tyres regularly for damage, stones, punctures, cuts, cracks, bulges, etc. Check the rims for damage. Contact a Holden Dealer, if in doubt.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures to avoid increased fuel consumption, uneven and premature tyre wear.

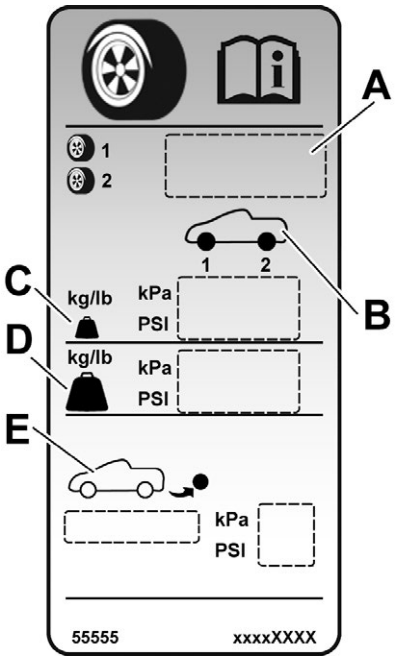
- Tyre pressure should be checked when cold as tyre pressure will increase as the tyres warm up.
- Check the air pressure of tyres (including the spare) weekly to ensure occupant safety, as well as reducing fuel consumption and increasing the life of the tyres.
- Replace any valve dust caps or extensions.

Tyre Placard



The correct pressures for tyres are shown on the tyre placard in the driver's door frame and in the tyre pressure table. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *281*.

Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for maximum load.



A. Tyre specifications
B. Tyre positions
C. Normal load (up to three people)
D. Full load (five people plus load)
E. Spare tyre information

Tyre Pressure Monitor System

This vehicle may have a Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).

Caution
Modifications made to the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) by anyone other than an authorised service facility may void authorisation to use the system.

Maintaining manufacturer's recommended tyre pressure is part of best practices to optimise the fuel consumption of the vehicle.

The Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tyre pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tyres and transmit tyre pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Note

The spare wheel may not be fitted with a TPMS sensor.

The tyre pressure monitor system checks the pressure of all four road wheels once a minute when vehicle speed exceeds a certain limit.

Caution
The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure light.

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold. If required, the tyres should be inflated to the pressure specified on the tyre placard. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the tyre placard, you should determine the correct tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, the TPMS illuminates a low tyre pressure light when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated.

Note

Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure light illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible and inflate them to the correct pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Caution

Tyre sealants could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using tyre sealants is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

The TPMS also includes a malfunction indicator to indicate if the system is not operating correctly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure light. When the system detects a malfunction, the light will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction light after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *250*.

Tyre Learn

The sensors are calibrated to the tyre/wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool. See your dealer for service.

Vehicle Loading

Select SET/CLR to define one of following options:

Light : for comfort pressure up to 3 people.

ECO : for ECO pressure up to 3 people.

Max : for full loading.

The ECO tyre pressure serves to achieve the smallest amount of fuel consumption possible.

Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

The tyre pressure tables show all possible tyre combinations. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *281*.

If the tyre pressure is to be reduced or increased on a vehicle with a tyre pressure monitor system, switch off the ignition. After adjusting the tyre pressure, switch the ignition on and select the desired setting as described previously in this section.

After inflating, driving may be required to update the tyre pressure values in the DIC. During this time (!) may illuminate.

Caution

The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure light.

Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation

When a low tyre pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tyre pressure warning light located on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure shown on the tyre placard. See *Wheels and Tyres* ⇨ *247*.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tyre displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). The low tyre pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tyres are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tyre pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *71*.

The low tyre pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and must be inflated to the specified pressure.

The tyre placard shows the size of the original equipment tyres and the correct inflation pressure for the tyres when they are cold. See *Wheels and Tyres* ⇨ *247*. Also see *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *281*.

The TPMS can warn about a low tyre pressure condition but it does not replace normal tyre maintenance. See *Wheels and Tyres* ⇨ *247* and *Tyre Rotation* ⇨ *252*.

Caution

Tyre sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tyre sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tyre sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM approved tyre sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tyre warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tyres has been replaced with the spare tyre. The spare tyre does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after the road tyre is replaced and the sensor calibration process is performed successfully. See "TPMS Sensor Calibration Process" later in this section.
- The TPMS sensor calibration process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tyres. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor calibration process. See "TPMS Sensor Calibration Process" later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The DIC message and the malfunction light should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor calibration process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.
- Replacement tyres or wheels do not match the original equipment tyres or wheels. Tyres and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Tread Depth* ⇨ *252*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly, it cannot detect or signal a low tyre condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message come on and stay on.

TPMS Sensor Calibration Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tyre/wheel position after rotating the tyres or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. The TPMS sensor calibration process should also be performed after replacing a spare tyre with a road tyre containing the TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the tyre/wheel positions using a TPMS relearn tool. See your dealer for service.

Tread Depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

- Replace the tyres when they are worn to the point where the tread wear indicators (TWI) appear.
- Tyres age, even if they are not used. Replacement of tyres every six years is recommended.

⚠ Warning

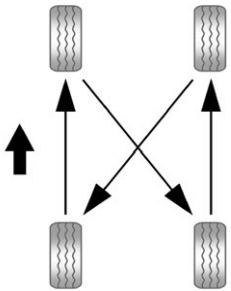
Do not attempt to drive on a flat tyre more than is necessary to stop safely. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre and wheel beyond repair. Tyres which

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

have been repaired or retreaded are not capable of being driven safely at high speeds. Therefore, their use is not recommended.

Tyre Rotation



It is recommended that you rotate tyres at every scheduled maintenance service

Different forces on the front and rear tyres make them wear differently, depending on several factors, such

as road surface, driving style, suspension alignment, wheel balancing, tyre pressure, etc.

The owner must evaluate the vehicle wear. This includes regular tyre rotation, which should be performed at each inspection. Tyre rotation is vital to achieving even tread wear and long tyre life.

Tyre rotation must be performed as indicated in the illustration.

Tyre condition is checked at periodic inspections by your Dealer, who can diagnose signs of uneven wear that may compromise your car's safety and performance.

Never include the temporary spare tyre in the tyre rotation due to size differences.

Caution

- Ageing causes tyre rubber to deteriorate. This also happens to the spare tyre even if it has not been used.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Tyre ageing depends on many conditions of use including temperature, load conditions, and tyre inflation pressure.
- A spare tyre which has not been used within a 6-year period should be used in emergencies only. If you need to use this tyre, drive at low speeds.

Buying New Tyres

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle for tyre size and load rating.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride
- Handling
- Speedometer accuracy
- Vehicle ground clearance
- Tyre clearance
- Snow chain clearance

⚠ Warning

Do not use different sizes or types of tyres and wheels than those originally fitted to the vehicle. Safety and performance of the vehicle may be affected. It may also affect road handling and lead to serious injury.

When replacing tyres, install all four tyres and wheels of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.

Wheel Covers

Use wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the vehicle and which comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements.

⚠ Warning

Use of incorrect tyres or wheel covers may result in damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

Tyre Chains

Holden recommends the use of tyre chains on rear wheels only.

Due to limited tyre clearances, tyre chains may cause damage to your vehicle. Fitting of tyre chains is at the risk of the owner.

If you choose to fit tyre chains, you should:

- observe all local regulations and recommendations regarding the use of tyre chains;
- observe all local regulations and recommendations regarding the use of tyre chains;
- observe all local regulations and recommendations regarding the use of tyre chains;
- use a correctly sized, well-fitted, diamond-pattern tyre chain;
- not exceed speed of 30 km/h;
- stop the vehicle in the event of any unusual noise;
- check the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *247*.

Whenever tyre chains are fitted, switch off the ESC. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *197*.

If driving in snowy conditions with a snorkel, see Snorkel Intake under *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *219*.

Tyre Changing

⚠ Warning

All passengers must be out of the vehicle when it is being jacked.

Do not jack a vehicle with a trailer attached. Remove the trailer first.

Only jack the vehicle on hard, level surfaces.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Use the jack only at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack, or damage to the vehicle.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Vehicles with alloy wheels may have a steel spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h if the tyre size or tread pattern of the spare tyre is different to the other tyres on the vehicle. Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

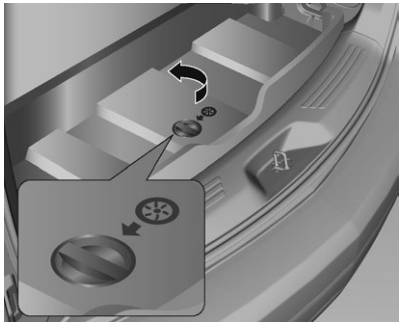
After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

1. Park on a hard, level surface, in a safe location.
2. Apply the park brake firmly.
3. Place the shift lever in position **P**.
4. Switch the hazard warning flashers on.
5. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
6. Chock the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tyre with a suitable solid object.

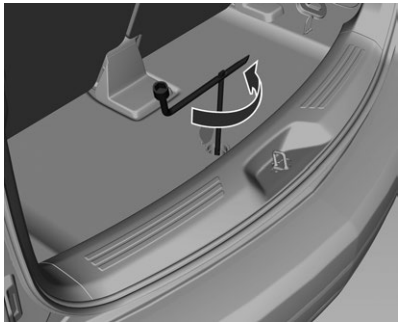
Note

Do not change more than one wheel at one time.

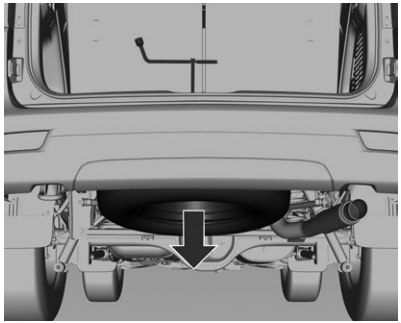
7. Remove the tools. See *Tools* ⇨ *247*.



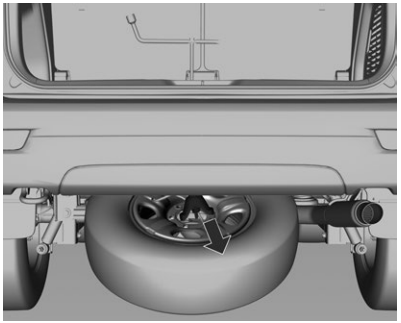
8. Rotate the spare wheel winch access cap anticlockwise to remove. Lift the carpet flap to access the winch slot.
9. Assemble the wheel wrench, jack handle extensions and the jack handle using a screwdriver.
10. Insert the chiselled end of the jack handle through the hole and into the slot.



11. Rotate the wheel wrench anticlockwise to lower the spare tyre to the ground.



12. Continue to rotate the wheel wrench until the spare tyre can be pulled out from under the vehicle.



13. Tilt the retainer and slide it up the cable so it can be pulled up through the wheel opening.
14. Place the spare tyre near the flat tyre.

Wheel nut removal

15. Remove the centre cap by placing the chisel end of the wheel wrench into one of the slots on the cap and gently prise the cap out.

Note

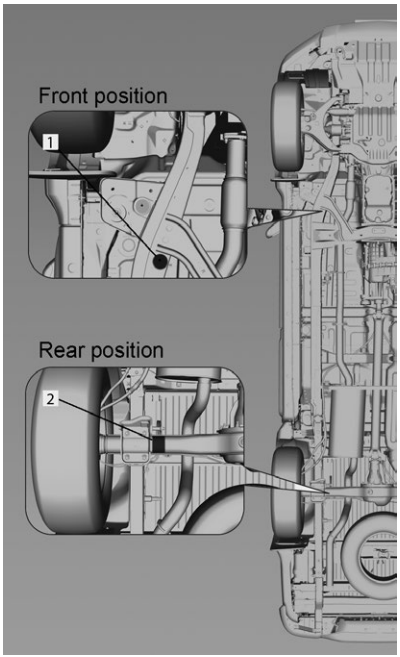
To protect the wheel, place a soft cloth between the wheel wrench and the wheel.

16. Turn the wheel wrench anticlockwise to loosen all the wheel nuts.

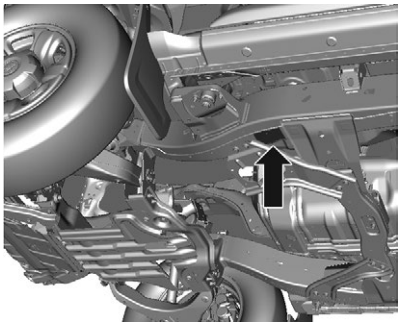
Note

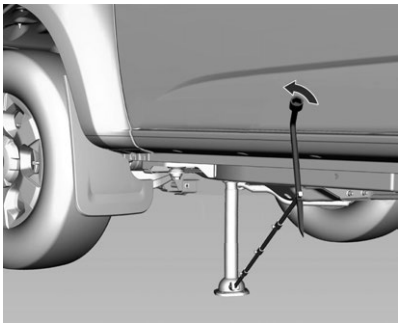
Do not remove the wheel nuts at this stage.

Jacking procedure



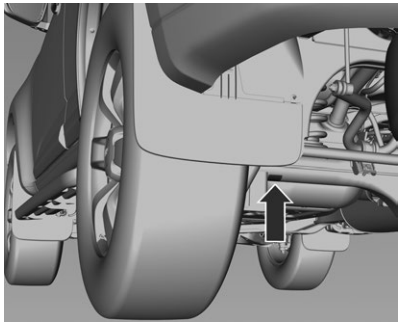
Front position:

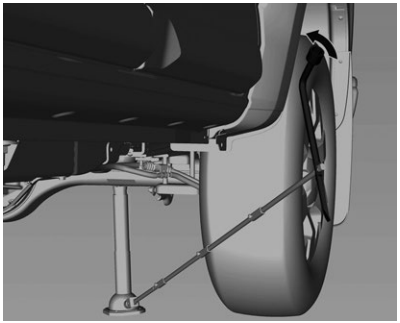




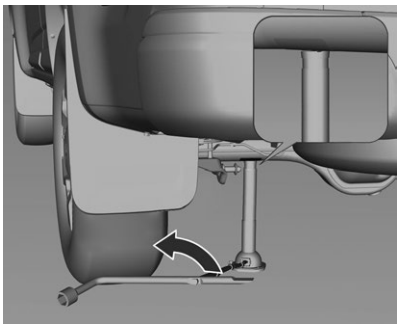
If the flat tyre is on the front of the vehicle, position the jack under the chassis rail between the two braces as shown (1).

Rear position:





If the flat tyre is on the rear, position the jack under the rear axle as close as possible to the shock absorber (2).



When positioning the jack under the rear axle housing, confirm that the slot on the upper side of the jack fits on the axle.

17. Set the jack to the necessary height before positioning it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.

⚠ Warning

Failure to position the jack as described could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

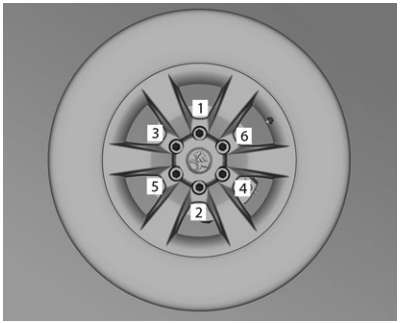
Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

18. Attach the jack handle and with the jack correctly aligned, rotate the handle until the wheel is clear of the ground.
19. Remove the wheel nuts.
20. Exchange the wheel on the vehicle with the spare wheel.
21. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel nuts and studs, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.

⚠ Danger

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts as the nuts may come loose. The vehicle wheel could fall off and may lead to serious injury or death.

22. Put the wheel nuts back on with the tapered end of the nuts towards the wheel.
23. Tighten each wheel nut by hand, then use the wheel wrench to tighten the nuts until the wheel is held against the hub.
24. Lower the vehicle by reversing the jacking procedure.
25. Remove the jack from under the vehicle.



26. With the wheel on the ground, use the wheel wrench to tighten the wheel nuts as tightly as possible in a crosswise sequence.

⚠ Warning

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench. Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque, as wheel nuts which have not been tightened properly could eventually allow the wheel to

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

come off while the vehicle is moving. See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *280*.

Storing a Flat or Spare Tyre and Tools

⚠ Warning

Storing a jack, a tyre, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

⚠ Warning

Failure to follow these tyre storage instructions carefully could result in personal injury or property damage if the hoist cable

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

fails or if the tyre comes loose. Make sure the tyre is stored securely before driving.

Caution

Storing an aluminium wheel with a flat tyre under your vehicle for an extended period of time or with the valve stem pointing up can damage the wheel. Always stow the wheel with the valve stem pointing down and have the wheel/tyre repaired as soon as possible.

Caution

The tyre hoist can be damaged if there is no tension on the cable when using it. To have the necessary tension, the spare or

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

road tyre and wheel assembly must be installed on the tyre hoist to use it.

⚠ Warning

An improperly stored spare tyre could come loose and cause a crash. To avoid personal injury or property damage, always store the spare tyre when the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

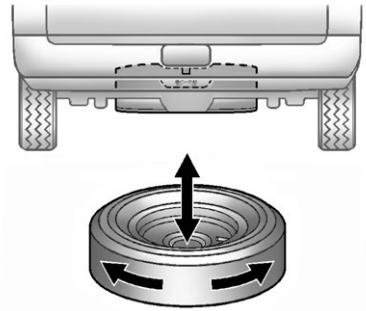
Store the tyre under the rear of the vehicle in the spare tyre carrier.

1. Put the tyre on the ground at the rear of the vehicle.
2. Pull the cable and spring (or chain) through the centre of the wheel. Tilt the wheel retainer plate down and through the centre of the wheel. Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel.
3. Use the screwdriver to assemble the wheel wrench, the jack extensions, and the jack handle.

Caution

Use of an air wrench or other power tools with the hoist mechanism is not recommended and could damage the system. Use only the tools supplied with the hoist mechanism.

4. Insert the chiselled end of the jack handle through the hole and into the slot.
5. Raise the tyre part way upward. Make sure the retainer is seated in the wheel opening.
6. Raise the tyre fully against the underside of the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it tight under the vehicle. You cannot overtighten the cable or chain.



7. Make sure the tyre is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to turn the tyre. If the tyre moves, use the wheel wrench to tighten the cable or chain.

Repeat this tightness check procedure when checking the spare tyre pressure according to the scheduled maintenance information or any time the spare tyre is handled due to service of other components.

To store the jack and tools, reverse the steps for removing them. See *Tools* ⇨ *247*.

When reinstalling the repaired wheel:

1. Install the centre cap.
2. Place the cap on the wheel and tap it into place until it is flush with the wheel.

Jump Starting

Read the following warnings and procedure in full before attempting to jump start the vehicle.

If you are still unsure about jump starting, Holden strongly recommends for your safety and that of the vehicle that you seek the assistance of a suitably trained service technician.

⚠ Warning

Do not push start or tow start the vehicle. Therefore, if the battery is flat, jump start, but do not push start the vehicle.

Batteries produce explosive gases, contain corrosive acids and supply levels of electrical current high enough to cause burns. Therefore, adhere to the following when working near a battery:

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not attempt jump starting directly from the battery in the engine compartment.
- Do not let the jumper lead clamps touch each other or other metal parts.
- Do not allow the jumper leads to contact any rotating engine components.
- Do not use open flames or sparks near the battery.
- Do not smoke near the battery.
- Never use a quick charger to start the engine.
- The battery must be removed from the vehicle for recharging.
- Wear eye protection such as safety glasses and avoid leaning over the battery.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

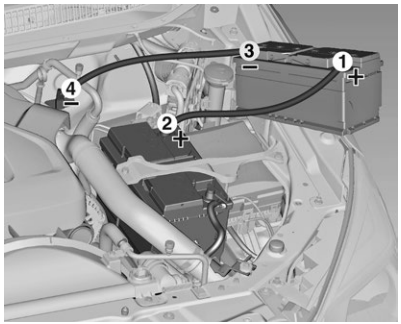
- Battery acid is corrosive. If it gets on your skin, wash with plenty of water immediately. If it gets in your eyes you should not only flush with lots of water, but should also seek medical help. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash it off immediately.
- Remove rings, metal watch bands and other metal jewellery before working around the battery.
- If a permanently connected hands free telephone kit is fitted to the vehicle, remove the fuse for the telephone kit before jump starting. Remember to replace the fuse afterwards.

- A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures of 0°C.

  Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jumper leads.
- Use a booster battery with the same voltage (12 volts). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged battery.
- Use jumper leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 25 mm².
- Do not disconnect the discharged battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical devices.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.

Jump Starting Procedure

1. Position the two vehicles so that they are not touching.
2. Apply the park brakes.
3. Place the selector lever in position **P**.
4. Turn the ignition off.
5. Turn off all lamps and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers or any lights needed for the work area.



6. Connect one end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster battery (1).
7. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (2).
8. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3).
9. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point, such as the engine block or an engine mounting bolt (4).

   Connect as far away from the discharged battery as possible (at least 60 cm).

Note

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts within the engine compartment.

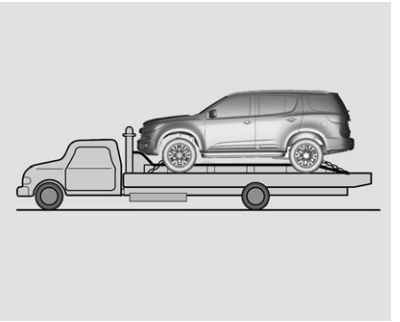
10. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump start and allow to idle for at least 5 minutes.
11. Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery.

    Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of 1 minute.
12. Allow both engines to idle for approximately 3 minutes with the leads connected.
13. Switch on the headlamps and the heated rear window of the vehicle that received the jump start.
14. Leave the engines running while removing the BLACK negative jumper lead first, followed by the RED positive jumper lead.

Note

While removing each clamp, do not touch any other metal while the other end remains attached.

Towing the Vehicle



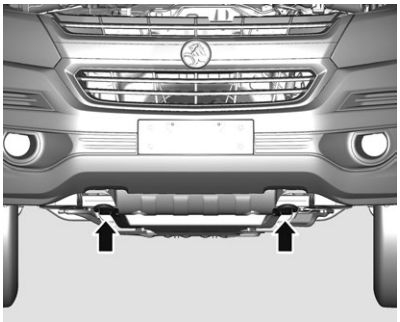
A flat-bed tow truck is the best method of towing the vehicle to avoid damage.

⚠ Warning

No passenger should remain in the vehicle being towed.

Proper lifting or towing equipment is necessary when lifting or towing the vehicle to prevent damage. State and local laws must be followed.

In an emergency, the vehicle may be towed on all four wheels for short distances only, using the front towing eyes.



Caution
No load applied to an individual front towing eye shall exceed 1,500 kg (static or dynamic).

Emergency Towing Procedure

Tow only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds:

1. Fit the towing equipment to the front towing eyes.

   Do not attach towing equipment to the bumpers or brackets, suspension or cross members.
2. Turn the ignition key to **ON** to enable the steering lock, windscreen wipers and turn signals operation.
3. Place the selector lever in **N** or neutral.
4. Release the park brake.

Note

If the vehicle's battery is flat and the vehicle requires towing, see *Interruption of Power Supply* ⇨ *189*.

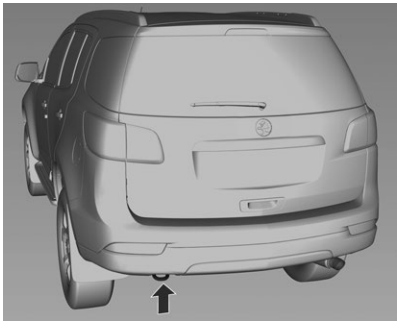
Note

- A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes.
- Drive slowly when towing.
- Power assist for brakes and power steering are not available when the engine is turned off.

  The brakes and steering still function, but require greater effort.
- To prevent exhaust fumes entering the towed vehicle, close the windows and press .
- Vehicles with damaged transmissions must not be towed.
- The wheels, axles, drive train, steering and brakes must be in good condition.
- Only the driver should be inside a towed vehicle.

Towing Another Vehicle

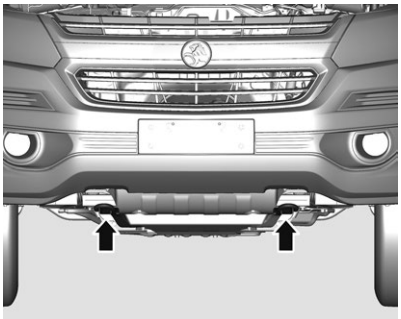
In an emergency, another vehicle may be towed using the rear towing eye. State and local laws must be followed.

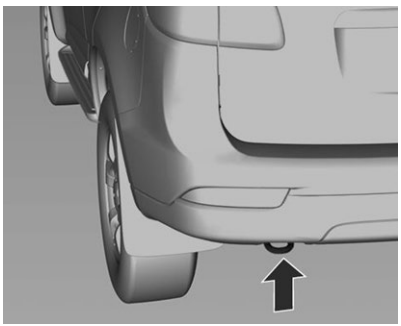


Caution

No load applied to a rear towing eye is to exceed 1,375 kg (static or dynamic).

Vehicle Recovery





The vehicle may be recovered using the front or rear towing eyes.

Attach a tow rope or other suitably rated system to the towing eyes.

Ensure all equipment is in good condition and is being used correctly.

Caution

The front towing eyes are rated to 1,500 kg each and the rear towing eye to 1,375 kg. Any load (static or dynamic) applied to these locations must not exceed the rated capacity of each point.

Care should be taken not to damage the bumper fascia or other vehicle components with the tow rope or recovery system, during recovery.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Washing

The vehicle's paintwork is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage. Failure to do so may result in permanent damage, particularly in hot weather conditions.

Road bloom is a gradual build up of road and environmental grime. This should be removed with a paint cleaner once a year, in addition to normal washing.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. Never use an automatic wash that requires anything touching the paint (other than water). The wipers must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a Holden Dealer.

Caution

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois off the vehicle. Rinse the chamois frequently. Use a separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

⚠ Warning

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead, until brake performance returns to normal.

Vehicle Graphics

Care for your vehicle graphics like you would any fine paint finish.

Wash Regularly

- Wash whenever the vehicle appears dirty. Contaminants allowed to remain on the graphic may be more difficult to remove during cleaning.

- Rinse off as much dirt and grit as possible first with a spray of water. See *'Difficult Contaminants'* below for spot cleaning of bird droppings, tar, etc.
- Use a wet, non-abrasive detergent and a soft, clean cloth or sponge.
- Rinse thoroughly with clean water. To reduce water spotting, immediately use a silicone squeegee to remove water and finish with a clean microfibre cloth.

Caution
It is not recommended to apply wax or other similar coatings on vehicle graphics.

Automated Car Washes

Touch-less car washes are the best for graphic care. Use of brush car washes (depending upon the frequency and quality of brush) may cause dulling, scratching or lift the edge of the graphics.

Pressure Washing

Although hand washing is the preferred cleaning method, pressure washing may be used under these conditions:

- Ensure the water pressure is kept below 1400 kPa (2000 psi).
- Keep the water temperature below 80°C.
- Use a spray nozzle with a 40° wide angle spray pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at least 300 mm away from, and perpendicular (at 90°) to, the graphic.

Caution
Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle of less than 90° to the graphic may lift the edges of the film.

Difficult Contaminants

Soften difficult contaminants such as bug splatter, bird droppings, tree sap and similar contaminants by soaking them for several minutes with very hot, soapy water. Rinse thoroughly and dry. If further cleaning is needed, try a product such as Bug and Tar Remover or a Citrus Base Cleaner by testing in an inconspicuous area to ensure no damage to the graphics before applying to the affected area.

Isopropyl alcohol (IPA) mixed two parts IPA to 1 part water or denatured alcohol may also help.

- Spot-clean the contaminants.
- Do not use rough scrubbing or abrasive tools, which will scratch the film.
- Wash and rinse off all residue immediately.

Fuel Spills

Wipe off immediately to avoid degrading the vinyl and adhesive. Then wash, rinse and dry as described in *'Wash Regularly'* as soon as possible.

Film Restoration

The following restoration recommendations will help keep your vehicle wraps looking their best:

- Do not use any abrasive polishes or cutting compounds.
- Do not use any polishing or wax products on matte or textured films.
- Use if there is wax or any wax residue on the surface, remove with an all-purpose cleaner.

The following table shows some available products to help restore your vehicle wrap.

Note

Before using, always test and approve in an inconspicuous area.

Film or Finish Type	Product or Solution
Smooth Gloss Texture	3M™ Perfect-It™ Show Car Paste Wax 39526
Matte or Satin Texture	Isopropyl alcohol and water (2:1 ratio)
Matte White (1080-M10) Carbon Fibre White (1080-CF10)	Based on the type/degree of contamination, use one of more of these solutions, in the order shown, to remove any build-up: 1. Hot, soapy water solution 2. Isopropyl alcohol (IPA) and water (ratio 2:1) 3. Simple Green® All-Purpose Cleaner 4. Household chlorine bleach; followed by IPA/water. 5. Mineral spirits; followed by IPA/water
Carbon Fibre or Brushed Metal Texture	3M™ Tyre Restorer or Meguiar's Natural Shine Protectant
Carbon Fibre Black (1080-CF12)	Meguiar's Ultimate Black Plastic Restorer

Note

The products listed are examples and may not be available. Use this table as a guide if an equivalent product is required.

Caution

Do not allow the cleaning solution to soak on the surface; immediately rinse with clear water.

Store Indoors or Under Cover Whenever Possible

Just like paint, vinyl graphics are degraded by prolonged exposure to sun and atmospheric pollutants, particularly on the horizontal surfaces such as the bonnet and roof.

Whenever possible, store the vehicle in a garage, or at least in a shaded area during the day. At night protect the vehicle from dew or rain, which may contain acidic pollutants (a common problem in many large

metropolitan areas). When a garage is not available, consider using a cloth car cover at night.

If your graphics start to discolour or turn brown, immediately remove the graphics from the vehicle to avoid staining the underlying paint.

Exterior Lamps

Headlamp and other lamp covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive, solvent based cleaners or caustic agents and do not dry-clean them.

Air Intakes

When washing the vehicle, clear any debris from the air intakes between the bonnet and windscreen and below the front bumper.

Polishing and Waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly. At the latest, wax when water no longer beads on the panel surface.

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts and vehicle graphics must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and Windscreen Wiper Blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

- Never use abrasive cleaners to clean glass.
- Refer to a Holden Dealer for windscreen washer additive.
- Old wiper blades can cause windscreen scratching. Regularly inspect and replace them.

Caution
Do not operate the wiper blades by hand as this damages the wiper drive mechanism.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Wheels and Tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

- Remove oil and grease with soap and water or detergent.
- Do not use petrol to clean tyres.
- Use a good quality tyre and bumper shine if required.
- A good quality wheel cleaner can be used for cleaning alloy wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners.

Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by your Holden Dealer.

Caution

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Underbody

Substances can cause rust under the vehicle.

- Hose the underbody with clean water whenever the vehicle is washed.
- Where the vehicle is exposed to heavy concentrations of corrosive materials, inspect and wash the complete underbody at least once each year.

Interior Care

⚠ Warning

Many cleaning products are toxic, flammable or may damage the interior. When cleaning the interior, avoid volatile cleaners such as acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers, or cleaners such as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents. Never use carbon tetrachloride, petrol or naphtha for any cleaning purpose. Ensure that the vehicle is well ventilated while using any cleaners and always follow the cleaning product manufacturer's recommendations. Water based cleaners, rather than solvent based cleaners, are recommended.

Steam cleaning of seats is not recommended.

Interior and Upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

The instrument panel should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clean seat belts with a mild, non-abrasive soap and lukewarm water.

After washing, thoroughly, sponge the solution out of the belts.

Avoid wipe damp cloth on areas near of Front Seat power switch, because the liquid can compromise the Seat's working. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

Plastic and Rubber Parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high pressure jet cleaners.

Floor Mats

Ensure that floor mats, when fitted, are securely fastened and do not interfere with pedal operation.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
Service Information 273

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 274

General Information

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

See your Service/Warranty Booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

Engine Oil Life System

The vehicle has a computer system that lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter.

The frequency of the oil change depends on driving patterns, engine RPM and engine temperature.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, Change engine oil soon will appear in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

When Change engine oil soon is displayed, have the engine oil and filter changed as soon as possible, within the next 1,000 km.

It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate that an oil change is necessary for a longer period than that shown in the Maintenance schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the Maintenance schedule outlined in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Engine Type	2.8L Diesel
Engine oil specification	SAE 5W-30 or 5W-40; dexos (dexos2™)
Coolant specification	50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant, conforming to specification number GM6277M
Automatic transmission fluid	Dexron® VI
Transfer case fluid (four-wheel drive)	Dexron® VI
Differential oil	Synthetic Hypoid 75W/90 GL5
Brake fluid	DOT 4 Hydraulic brake fluid conforming to specification number GMW3356
Battery	12 volts, 90 amp hours

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 275
Engine Identification 275
Identification Labels 275

Vehicle Data
Engine Data 277
Vehicle Weight 277
Vehicle Dimensions 280
Capacities and Specifications 280
Tyre Pressure 281

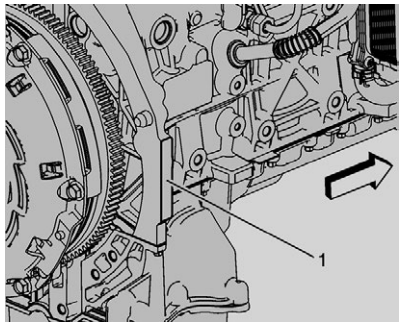
Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is located on the chassis rail on the driver's side.

The VIN is also located on the instrument panel visible through the windscreen.

Engine Identification



⇨: Front of vehicle

The engine serial number (1) is located on the right side at the rear of the engine block.

Identification Labels

Compliance Label

The vehicle compliance label is located on the front passenger's door frame.

1: Approval number

2: Manufacturer

3: Category

4: Number of seats

5: Vehicle identification number

6: Compliance date

Built Date Label

A label containing the vehicle build date is also located on the front passenger's door frame.

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Engine Type	2.8 L4 Turbo Diesel
Number of cylinders	4
Engine	2776 cc
Engine power	Please refer to holden.com.au
Engine torque	Please refer to holden.com.au
Diesel fuel	See *Fuel for Diesel Engines* ⇨ *212*

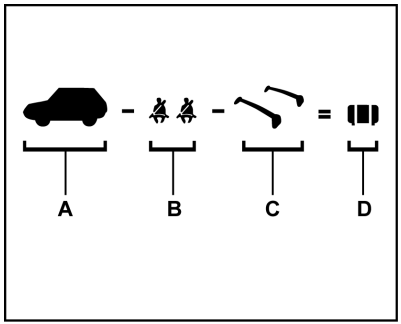
Vehicle Weight

Overloading is a safety hazard and could also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Maximum Vehicle Carry Capacity

	Carrying capacity (occupants, accessories and luggage) (kg)
LT	626
LTZ	618
Z71	611

Example Loading Guide



Example 1:

A. Vehicle carrying capacity (example 645 kg)

B. Subtract occupant weight (example 2 x 80 kg = 160 kg)

C. Subtract mass of fitted accessories (see the following table) (example 82 kg)

D. Available luggage capacity (645 – 160 – 82 = 403 kg*)

*Subject to axle loads not being exceeded. See Axle Loads further on in this section.

Example 2:

A. Vehicle carrying capacity (example 645 kg)

B. Subtract occupant weight (example 5 x 80 kg = 400 kg)

C. Subtract mass of fitted accessories (see the following table) (example 40 kg)

D. Available luggage capacity (645 – 400 – 40 = 205 kg*)

*Subject to axle loads not being exceeded. See Axle Loads further on in this section.

Accessory mass examples

Towbar	31 kg
Bull bar	53 kg
Nudge bar	6 kg
Cargo barrier	12 kg
Snorkel	3 kg

Axle Loads

Maximum Front and Rear Axle Loads

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options, tow ball download when towing, or accessories fitted to the vehicle. Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

	Front Axle Load (kg)	Rear Axle Load (kg)
All models	1450	1600

Vehicle Dimensions

Dimensions (mm)

	Length	Width (incl. mirrors)	Height (incl. roof rail)	Front Track	Rear Track	Front Overhang	Wheel Base
LT	4887	2132	1840	1570	1588	957	2845
LTZ / Z71	4887	2132	1846	1570	1588	957	2845

The above figures are based on the design dimensions.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Type	2.8 L4 Turbo Diesel
Refill engine oil including filter (approximately)	5.6 L
Coolant (approximately)	9.0 L
Fuel tank	76.0 L
Wheel Nut Torque	140 N•m

Tyre Pressure

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure													
		Up to 3 people (Light)				Up to 3 people (ECO)				Full load (Max)				Spare	
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear		Front		Rear		—	
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
255/65 R17 SL 110S	17 x 7.0J	240	35	240	35	240	35	240	35	240	35	280	40	280	40
265/60 R18 SL 110T	18 x 7.5J	240	35	240	35	240	35	240	35	240	35	280	40	280	40

Customer Information

Customer Information
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 282
Owner Assistance 282

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 284
Cybersecurity 284

Customer Information

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Dexos® is a trademark of General Motors LLC

Dexron® and Dexcool® are registered trademarks of General Motors LLC

Owner Assistance

Holden Customer Care

At Holden, we want you to be completely satisfied with your ownership experience. This applies to your vehicle and any Holden representative you may deal with.

Refer below for two options for seeking assistance with your query.

Holden Dealerships

Holden encourages you to seek assistance from your Holden Dealership. Each Holden Dealership is equipped to manage any sales, servicing, parts or technical query.

In the instance that you wish to escalate a query to a higher level of staff, further options are available to you.

As a first step, Holden suggests you discuss any concern with the relevant Department Manager (Sales Manager or Service Manager).

Alternatively, the Dealership General Manager or Dealer Principal will also be happy to assist you.

Holden Customer Care Office

Should you wish to speak to a Holden representative, you are welcome to contact the Holden Customer Care team.

Refer below for operating hours and various methods of communication.

Operating Hours

Weekdays: 8am – 7pm AEST (except Victorian Public holidays)

Telephone

Holden Customer Care can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

Email

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

Written Correspondence

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
GPO Box 1714
Melbourne 3001

Your written correspondence should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business
- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model
- Vehicle identification number (I.S.O.V.I.N.), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/ Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glovebox
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glovebox.

Before you write however, remember that the telephone is a quicker and more effective means of communication.

New Zealand

The information in this Owner's Manual applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the Warranty and Owner Assistance provisions for New Zealand. Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glovebox wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached on:

0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Care.

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
PO Box 11195
Ellerslie
Auckland 1542

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Event Data Recorders

The vehicle has a number of sophisticated systems that monitor and control several vehicle data. Some data may be stored during regular operation to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions, other data is stored only in a crash or near crash event by systems commonly called event data recorders (EDR).

The systems may record data about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated (e.g. engine speed, brake application, seat belt usage). To read this data, special equipment and access to the vehicle are required. This will take place when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden dealer. Some data is electronically fed into global diagnostic systems. The manufacturer will not access information about a crash event or share it with others except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee.
- In response to an official request of police or similar government office.
- As part of the manufacturer's defence in case of legal proceedings.
- As required by law.

In addition, the manufacturer may use the collected or received data:

- For the manufacturer's research needs.
- To make it available for research needs where appropriate confidentiality is maintained and need is shown.
- To share summary data which is not tied to a specific vehicle with other organisations for research purposes.

Cybersecurity

GM collects information about the use of your vehicle including operational and safety related information. We collect this information to provide, evaluate, improve, and troubleshoot our products and services and to develop new products and services. The protection of vehicle electronics systems and customer data from unauthorised external electronic access or control is important to GM. GM maintains appropriate security standards, practices, guidelines and controls aimed at defending the vehicle and the vehicle service ecosystem against unauthorised electronic access, detecting possible malicious activity in related networks, and responding to suspected cybersecurity incidents in a timely, coordinated and effective manner. Security incidents could impact your safety or compromise your private data. To minimise security risks, please do not connect your vehicle electronic systems to unauthorised devices or connect

your vehicle to any unknown or untrusted networks (such as Bluetooth, Wi-Fi or similar technology). In the event that you suspect any security incident impacting your data or the safe operation of your vehicle, please stop operating your vehicle and contact your dealer.

Index

A

Add-On Electrical Equipment . . . 219
Adjustable Air Vents 175
Adjustments
  Seat, Initial Drive 25
Agreements
  Trademarks and
    License 133, 168
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 229
Air Conditioning 170, 172, 174
Air Conditioning Regular
  Operation 177
Air Filter, Passenger
  Compartment 177
Air Intake 177
Airbags
  Curtain 40
  Front 38
  Seat Belt Tensioner Light 66
  Side 39
  System Check 37
Alarm System
  Anti-theft 15
AM-FM Radio 94, 146
Antenna
  Fixed Mast 97, 149
Anti-theft
  Alarm System 15
Anti-theft (cont'd)
  Alarm System Messages 77
Antilock Brake System (ABS) . . . 194
  Warning Light 67
Appearance Care
  Exterior 266
  Interior 271
Apple CarPlay and
  Android Auto 128, 161
Armrest Storage 49
Audio
  Bluetooth 100
  Theft-Deterrent Feature 143
Automatic
  Light Control 82
  Transmission 187
  Transmission Fluid 229
Automatic Transmission
  Electronic Driving
    Programs 189
  Fault 189
  Interruption of Power
    Supply 189
  Manual Mode 189
  Shift Lever 188
  Transmission Display 187
Auxiliary Devices 156
Auxiliary Jack 100

B
Battery 232
Jump Starting 261
Power Protection 88
Voltage and Charging Messages 74
Biodiesel 213
Blade Replacement, Wiper 234
Bleeding
Diesel Fuel System 234
Bluetooth
Overview 122, 156
Bluetooth Audio 100
Bonnet 224
Boot
Cover 51
Brake
System Warning Light 67
Brakes 194
Antilock 194
Assist 195
Fluid 231
Parking 195
System Messages 75
Break-In, New Vehicle 181
Bulb Replacement
Front Turn Signal Lamps 236
Headlamps 234, 235
Bulb Replacement (cont'd)
Licence Plate Lamps 240
Taillamps 237
Buying New Tyres 253
Buzzers, Warning 74

C
Camera, Rear Vision 209
Capacities and Specifications 280
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 185
Tailgate 14
Caution, Danger, and Warning 3
Central Locking System 13
Chains, Tyre 254
Charging System Light 66
Check
Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator) 66
Child Restraint Systems
Top Tether 45
Child Restraints
ISOFIX 45
Systems 41
Cleaning
Exterior Care 266
Interior Care 271
Climate Control Systems 170
Electronic 172
Rear Air Conditioning System 174
Control System
Emission 222
Controls
Steering Wheel 92, 145
Convex Mirrors 17
Coolant
Engine 229
Engine Temperature Gauge 64
Cooling 170, 172, 174
Cooling System
Engine Messages 75
Courtesy Lamps 86
Coverage Explanations 115
Covers 85
Boot 51
Misted Lamps 85
Wheel 253
Cruise Control 199
Light 71
Messages 75
Cupholders 48
Curtain Airbag System 40
Cybersecurity 284

D
Danger, Warning, and Caution 3
Database Coverage Explanations 115
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 83
Descent Control System 68
Descent Control System (DCS) 197
Destination 107
Devices
Auxiliary 156
Diesel
Starting Your Engine 184
Diesel Fuel System Bleeding ... 234
Diesel Particulate Filter 186
Diesel Particulate Filter Messages 76
Dimensions
Vehicle 280
Displays
Automatic Transmission 187
Door
Ajar Messages 75
Central Locking System 13
Manual Door Locks 12
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 71
Driving
Electronic Programs 189
Environment 179
Hill and Mountain Roads 181
Off-Road 180

E
Electrical Equipment, Add-On 219
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 242
Fuses 241
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 245
Electronic Climate Control System 172
Electronic Driving Programs 189
Electronic Stability Control 197
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 69
Electronic Stability Control Indicator Light 68
Emission Control System 222
Emission Information 222
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 229
Check Light (Malfunction Indicator) 66
Compartment Overview 226
Coolant 229
Coolant Temperature Gauge 64
Cooling System Messages 75
Exhaust 185
Oil Life System 228
Oil Messages 76
Oil Pressure Light 70
Power Messages 76
Starting 183
Starting Your Diesel Engine ... 184
Engine Data 277
Engine Identification 275
Engines
Diesel Fuel 212
Entry Lighting 87
Exit Lighting 88
Exterior Lamp Controls 82

F
Fault, Automatic Transmission 189
Filter 186
Fuel 233
Filter, Engine Air Cleaner 229
Fixed Air Vents 176
Fixed Mast Antenna 97, 149
Flashers, Hazard Warning 84
Flat Tyre Changing 254
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 229
Brakes 231
Four-Wheel Drive Transfer Case 190
Washer 230
Fog Lamps Front 85
Fog Light, Rear 71
Folding Mirrors 17
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 201
Four-Wheel Drive 190
Four-Wheel-Drive Light 68
Front Airbag System 38
Front Fog Lamp Light 71
Front Seat Position Seats Adjustment 25
Front Seats
Adjustment 25
Heated 28
Front Turn Signal Lamps 236
Fuel
Biodiesel 213
Diesel Engines 212
Filling the Tank 213
Filter 233
Gauge 63
Low Fuel Warning Light 70
System Messages 76
Fuel for Diesel Engines 212
Fuses 241
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 242
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 245

G
Gauges
Engine Coolant Temperature 64
Fuel 63
Odometer 63
Gauges (cont'd)
Speedometer 62
Tachometer 63
Trip Odometer 63
Turn Signal 64
Warning Lights and Indicators 62
General Information
Vehicle Care 222
Getting In and Out of the Vehicle 12
Global Positioning System (GPS) 113
Glove Box 48
Guidance
Problems with the Route 115

H
Hands-Free Phone 162
Hazard Warning Flashers 84
Head Restraints 23
Headlamp Leveling Control 84
Headlamps 235
Automatic Light Control 82
Bulb Replacement 234
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 83
High-Beam On Light 71

Headlamps (cont'd)
High/Low Beam Changer 83
Lamps On Reminder 71
Heated
Rear Window 21
Heated Front Seats 28
Heating 172
High-Beam On Light 71
Hill and Mountain Roads 181
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 195
Home Page 144
Horn 58
HVAC 170, 172, 174

I

Identification Labels 275
If the System Needs Service 115
Ignition Positions 181
Immobiliser 16
Light 71
Indicator
Vehicle Ahead 68
Information
Service 273
Information on Loading the
Vehicle 53
Infotainment 142
Instrument Panel
Storage Area 47
Instrument Panel Overview 4, 56
Interruption of Power Supply 189
Introduction 2, 90
ISOFIX Child Restraint
Systems 45

J

Jack
Auxiliary 100
Jump Starting 261

K

Key and Lock Messages 77
Keys 7

L

Lamps
Boot 86
Courtesy 86
Daytime Running (DRL) 83
Exterior Controls 82
Front Fog 85
Front Turn Signal 236
Licence Plate 240
Malfunction Indicator (Check
Engine) 66
Messages 77
Lamps (cont'd)
Misted Covers 85
On Reminder 71
Reading 87
Reversing 85
Sun Visor 87
Taillamps 237
Lane Departure Warning 210
Lane Departure Warning Light ... 68
Leveling Control
Headlamp 84
Lighting
Entry 87
Exit 88
Illumination Control 85
Lights
Airbag and Seat Belt
Tensioner 66
Antilock Brake System
(ABS) Warning 67
Automatic Control 82
Brake System Warning 67
Charging System 66
Check Engine (Malfunction
Indicator) 66
Cruise Control 71
Descent Control System 68

Lights (cont'd)
Electronic Stability Control (ESC), Off 69
Engine Oil Pressure 70
Fog Lamp, Rear 71
Four-Wheel-Drive 68
Front Fog Lamp 71
High-Beam On 71
High/Low Beam Changer 83
Immobiliser 71
Lane Departure Warning 68
Low Fuel Warning 70
Pre-Heat 69
Safety Belt Reminders 65
Traction Control System (TCS) 69
Traction Control System Warning 69
Trailer Indicator 71
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System 70
Load Compartment Lamps 86
Loading the Vehicle 53
Locks
Central Locking System 13
Manual Door 12
Safety 13
Low Fuel Warning Light 70

M

Maintenance
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 177
Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 274
Transfer Case 190
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 66
Manual Mode 189
Map Data Updates 115
Maps 106
Memorised Settings 11
Messages
Airbag System 77
Anti-theft Alarm System 77
Battery Voltage and Charging 74
Brake System 75
Diesel Particulate Filter 76
Door Ajar 75
Engine Cooling System 75
Engine Oil 76
Engine Power 76
Fuel System 76
Key and Lock 77
Lamp 77
Object Detection System 77
Messages (cont'd)
Ride Control System 77
Service Vehicle 78
Steering System 78
Transmission 79
Tyre 78
Vehicle 74
Vehicle Reminder 80
Vehicle Speed 80
Messaging
Text 127
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 19
Convex 17
Folding 17
Manual Rearview 18
Power 17
Misted Light Covers 85
Monitor System, Tyre Pressure 248

N

Navigation
Destination 107
Using the System 101
Navigation Symbols 106
New Vehicle Break-In 181

O
Object Detection System
Messages 77
Object Detection, Side Blind
Zone Alert (SBZA) 207
Odometer 63
Trip 63
Off-Road 180
Driving 180
Oil
Engine 226
Engine Oil Life System 228
Messages 76
Pressure Light 70
Operation
Infotainment 145
Other Service Items
Air Conditioning System 170
Outlets
Power 61
Overview 90, 143
Instrument Panel 4, 56
Owner Assistance 282

P
Parking 184
Brake 195
Parking Assist 203
Passenger Compartment Air
Filter 177
Personalisation
Vehicle 80
Phone
Apple CarPlay and
Android Auto 128, 161
Bluetooth 122, 156
Hands-Free 162
Port
USB 97, 149
Positioning
Vehicle 114
Power
Mirrors 17
Outlets 61
Protection, Battery 88
Seat Adjustment 27
Windows 19
Pre-Heat Light 69
Pregnancy, Using Safety Belts ... 36
Pressure
Tyre 281
Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording 284
Problems with Route
Guidance 115

R
Radio
AM-FM 146
Radio Reception 95, 96, 147
Radios
AM-FM Radio 94
Reading Lamps 87
Rear Air Conditioning
System 174
Rear Fog Light 71
Rear Seats 28
Rear Storage 50
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 209
Rear Window Washer/Wiper 60
Rear Windows
Heated 21
Rearview Mirrors 18
Automatic Dimming 19
Recognition
Voice 116
Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants 274
Remote Control 11

Remote Control (cont'd)
Radio 11
Remote Vehicle Start 9
Replacement Parts
Airbags 40
Replacing Airbag System 40
Replacing Safety Belt System
Parts after a Crash 36
Restraints
Where to Put 44
Reverse Lamps 85
Ride Control Systems 197
Electronic Stability (ESC) 197
Messages 77
Roof Rack System 53
Rotation, Tyres 252

S

Safety Belts 33
Care 36
Reminders 65
Replacing after a Crash 36
Three-Point 34
Use During Pregnancy 36
Safety Locks 13
Seats
Adjustment, Front 25
Head Restraints 23
Seats (cont'd)
Heated Front 28
Position, Front 25
Power Adjustment, Front 27
Rear 28
Second Row 29
Third Row Seat 31
Second Row Seats 29
Service
Doing Your Own Work 223
Vehicle Messages 78
Service and Maintenance
Service Information 273
Service Information 273
Servicing System 115
Settings 112, 130, 165
Memorised 11
Shift Lever 188
Side Airbag System 39
Side Blind Zone Alert 207
Signals, Turn and
Lane-Change 84
Specifications and
Capacities 280
Speedometer 62
Start Assist, Hill 195
Start Vehicle, Remote 9
Starting the Diesel Engine 184
Starting the Engine 183
Steering 179
Wheel Adjustment 57
Wheel Controls 58
Steering System Messages 78
Steering Wheel Controls 92, 145
Storage
Boot Cover 51
Rear 50
Vehicle 222
Storage Areas
Armrest 49
Glove Box 48
Information on Loading the
Vehicle 53
Instrument Panel 47
Roof Rack System 53
Sunglasses 49
Sun Visor Lamps 87
Sun Visors 22
Sunglass Storage 49
Symbols
Navigation 106
System
Forward Collision
Alert (FCA) 201
Global Positioning 113

System (cont'd)
Infotainment 142
Roof Rack 53

T
Tachometer 63
Tailgate 14
Taillamps 237
Technical Data
Tyre Pressure 281
Text Messaging 127
Theft-Deterrent Systems
Immobiliser 16
Third-Row Seats 31
Three-Point Seat Belt 34
Tire Pressure Monitoring
System Light 70
Tools 247
Top-Tether Child Restraint
Systems 45
Towing
Another Vehicle 264
Trailer 215
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ... 219
Vehicle 263
Traction
Control System (TCS) 196
Traction (cont'd)
Control System Warning
Light 69
Traction Control System
(TCS) Off Light 69
Trademarks and
License
Agreements 133, 168, 282
Trailer
Sway Control (TSC) 219
Towing 215
Trailer Indicator Light 71
Transfer Case 190
Transmission
Automatic 187
Fluid, Automatic 229
Messages 79
Transmission Display 187
Tread Depth 252
Trip Odometer 63
Turn and Lane-Change
Signals 84
Turn Signal 64
Tyre Pressure 281
Tyres
Buying New Tyres 253
Chains 254
Changing 254
Tyres (cont'd)
Messages 78
Pressure 247
Pressure Monitor Operation .. 250
Pressure Monitor System 248
Rotation 252
Tyres and Wheels 247

U
Updates
Map Data 115
USB Port 97, 149
Using the Navigation System ...101
Using the System 93
Using This Manual 3
Using Voice Recognition 129

V
Vehicle
Getting In and Out 12
Identification Number (VIN) ... 275
Messages 74
Personalisation 80
Reminder Messages 80
Remote Start 9
Speed Messages 80
Towing 263
Towing Another Vehicle 264
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 68

Vehicle Care
Tyre Pressure 247
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 284
Vehicle Dimensions 280
Vehicle Identification Labels 275
Vehicle Positioning 114
Vehicle Storage 222
Vehicle Weight 277
Ventilation
Adjustable Air 175
Fixed Air Vents 176
Visors 22
Voice Recognition 116

W

Warning
Brake System Light 67
Caution and Danger 3
Warning Chimes 74
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 62
Warnings
Hazard Flashers 84
Washer Fluid 230
Weights
Vehicle 277
Wheel Covers 253
Wheels and Tyres 247
Where to Put the Restraint 44
Windows 19
Heated, Rear 21
Power 19
Windshield
Wiper/Washer 59
Wiper Blade Replacement 234
Wipers
Rear Washer 60